

{Made Easy}

VBA MADE EASY

A Beginners Handbook To Easily Learn
VBA

VBA

100+ pages

of professional hints and tricks

GoalKicker.com

Disclaimer This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes and is

Free Programming Books

not affiliated with official VBA group(s) or company(s). All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners

Contents

About

1

Chapter 1: Getting started with VBA

Section 1.1: Accessing the Visual Basic Editor in Microsoft Office 2

Section 1.2: Debugging 2

Section 1.3: First Module and Hello World 4

Chapter 2: Comments

6

Section 2.1: Apostrophe Comments

Section 2.2: REM Comments 6

6

Chapter 3: String Literals - Escaping, non-printable characters and line-continuations

7

Section 3.1: Escaping the " character

7

Section 3.2: Assigning long string literals

7

Section 3.3: Using VBA string constants

7

Chapter 4: VBA Option Keyword

9

Section 4.1: Option Explicit

9

Section 4.2: Option Base {0 | 1}

10

Section 4.3: Option Compare {Binary | Text | Database}

12

Chapter 5: Declaring Variables

14

Section 5.1: Type Hints

14

Section 5.2: Variables

15

Section 5.3: Constants (Const)

18

Section 5.4: Declaring Fixed-Length Strings	19
Section 5.5: When to use a Static variable	20
Section 5.6: Implicit And Explicit Declaration	22
Section 5.7: Access Modifiers	
22	
Chapter 6: Declaring and assigning strings	24
Section 6.1: Assignment to and from a byte array	24
Section 6.2: Declare a string constant	24
Section 6.3: Declare a variable-width string variable	24
Section 6.4: Declare and assign a fixed-width string	24
Section 6.5: Declare and assign a string array	24
Section 6.6: Assign specific characters within a string using Mid statement	25
Chapter 7: Concatenating strings	26
Section 7.1: Concatenate an array of strings using the Join function	26
Section 7.2: Concatenate strings using the & operator	26
Chapter 8: Frequently used string manipulation	27
Section 8.1: String manipulation frequently used examples	27
Chapter 9: Substrings	
29	
Section 9.1: Use Left or Left\$ to get the 3 left-most characters in a string	

.....	29
Section 9.2: Use Right or Right\$ to get the 3 right-most characters in a string	
.....	29
Section 9.3: Use Mid or Mid\$ to get specific characters from within a string	
.....	29
Section 9.4: Use Trim to get a copy of the string without any leading or trailing spaces	
.....	29
Chapter 10: Searching within strings for the presence of substrings	
.....	30
Section 10.1: Use InStr to determine if a string contains a substring	
.....	30
Section 10.2: Use InStrRev to find the position of the last instance of a substring	
.....	30
Section 10.3: Use InStr to find the position of the first instance of a substring	
.....	30
 Chapter 11: Assigning strings with repeated characters	
.....	31
Section 11.1: Use the String function to assign a string with n repeated characters	
.....	31
Section 11.2: Use the String and Space functions to assign an n-character string	
.....	31
Chapter 12: Measuring the length of strings	
.....	32
Section 12.1: Use the Len function to determine the number of characters in a string	
.....	32
Section 12.2: Use the LenB function to determine the number of bytes in a string	
.....	32
Section 12.3: Prefer `If Len(myString) = 0 Then` over `If myString = "" Then`	
.....	32
Chapter 13: Converting other types to strings	
.....	33
Section 13.1: Use CStr to convert a numeric type to a string	
.....	33
Section 13.2: Use Format to convert and format a numeric type as a string	
.....	33
Section 13.3: Use StrConv to convert a byte-array of single-byte characters to	

[a string 33](#)

[Section 13.4: Implicitly convert a byte array of multi-byte-characters to a string 33](#)

[Chapter 14: Date Time Manipulation](#)

[..... 34](#)

[Section 14.1: Calendar](#)

[.....](#)

[34](#)

[Section 14.2: Base functions](#)

[.....](#)

[34](#)

[Section 14.3: Extraction functions](#)

[.....](#)

[36](#)

[Section 14.4: Calculation functions](#)

[.....](#)

[37](#)

[Section 14.5: Conversion and Creation](#)

[..... 39](#)

[Chapter 15: Data Types and Limits](#)

[..... 41](#)

[Section 15.1: Variant](#)

[.....](#)

[41](#)

[Section 15.2: Boolean](#)

[.....](#)

[42](#)

[Section 15.3: String](#)

[.....](#)

[42](#)

[Section 15.4: Byte](#)

[.....](#)

[43](#)

[Section 15.5: Currency](#)

[.....](#)

[44](#)

[Section 15.6: Decimal](#)

.....
[44](#)

[Section 15.7: Integer](#)

.....
[44](#)

[Section 15.8: Long](#)

.....
[44](#)

[Section 15.9: Single](#)

.....
[45](#)

[Section 15.10: Double](#)

.....
[45](#)

[Section 15.11: Date](#)

.....
[45](#)

[Section 15.12: LongLong](#)

.....
[46](#)

[Section 15.13: LongPtr](#)

.....
[46](#)

[Chapter 16: Naming Conventions](#)

..... [47](#)

[Section 16.1: Variable Names](#)

.....
[47](#)

[Section 16.2: Procedure Names](#)

.....
[50](#)

[Chapter 17: Data Structures](#)

.....
[52](#)

[Section 17.1: Linked List](#)

.....
[52](#)

[Section 17.2: Binary Tree](#)

.....
[53](#)

[Chapter 18: Arrays](#)

.....
[54](#)

[Section 18.1: Multidimensional Arrays](#)

.....
[54](#)

[Section 18.2: Dynamic Arrays \(Array Resizing and Dynamic Handling\)](#)

..... [59](#)

[Section 18.3: Jagged Arrays \(Arrays of Arrays\)](#)

..... [60](#)

[Section 18.4: Declaring an Array in VBA](#)

..... [63](#)

[Section 18.5: Use of Split to create an array from a string](#)

..... [64](#)

[Section 18.6: Iterating elements of an array](#)

..... [65](#)

[Chapter 19: Copying, returning and passing arrays](#)

..... [67](#)

[Section 19.1: Passing Arrays to Procedures](#)

..... [67](#)

[Section 19.2: Copying Arrays](#)

.....

[67](#)

[Section 19.3: Returning Arrays from Functions](#)

..... [69](#)

[Chapter 20: Collections](#)

.....

[71](#)

[Section 20.1: Getting the Item Count of a Collection](#)

..... [71](#)

[Section 20.2: Determining if a Key or Item Exists in a Collection](#)

..... [71](#)

[Section 20.3: Adding Items to a Collection](#)

..... [72](#)

Section 20.4: Removing Items From a Collection	73
Section 20.5: Retrieving Items From a Collection	74
Section 20.6: Clearing All Items From a Collection	75
Chapter 21: Operators	
77	
Section 21.1: Concatenation Operators	77
Section 21.2: Comparison Operators	
77	
Section 21.3: Bitwise \ Logical Operators	79
Section 21.4: Mathematical Operators	81
Chapter 22: Sorting	
82	
Section 22.1: Algorithm Implementation - Quick Sort on a One-Dimensional Array	82
Section 22.2: Using the Excel Library to Sort a One-Dimensional Array	82
Chapter 23: Flow control structures	
85	
Section 23.1: For loop	
85	
Section 23.2: Select Case	
86	
Section 23.3: For Each loop	
87	
Section 23.4: Do loop	

.....
88

Section 23.5: While loop

.....
88

Chapter 24: Passing Arguments ByRef or ByVal

..... 89

Section 24.1: Passing Simple Variables ByRef And ByVal

..... 89

Section 24.2: ByRef

.....
90

Section 24.3: ByVal

.....
91

Chapter 25: Scripting.FileSystemObject

..... 93

Section 25.1: Retrieve only the path from a file path

..... 93

Section 25.2: Retrieve just the extension from a file name

..... 93

Section 25.3: Recursively enumerate folders and files

..... 93

Section 25.4: Strip file extension from a file name

..... 94

Section 25.5: Enumerate files in a directory using FileSystemObject

..... 94

Section 25.6: Creating a FileSystemObject

..... 95

Section 25.7: Reading a text file using a FileSystemObject

..... 95

Section 25.8: Creating a text file with FileSystemObject

..... 96

Section 25.9: Using FSO.BuildPath to build a Full Path from folder path and file name 96

Section 25.10: Writing to an existing file with FileSystemObject

..... 97

Chapter 26: Working With Files and Directories Without Using FileSystemObject 98

Section 26.1: Determining If Folders and Files Exist

..... 98

Section 26.2: Creating and Deleting File Folders

..... 99

Chapter 27: Reading 2GB+ files in binary in VBA and File Hashes

..... 100

Section 27.1: This have to be in a Class module, examples later referred as "Random" 100

Section 27.2: Code for Calculating File Hash in a Standard module

..... 103

Section 27.3: Calculating all Files Hash from a root Folder

..... 105

Chapter 28: Creating a procedure

..... 109

Section 28.1: Introduction to procedures

..... 109

Section 28.2: Function With Examples

..... 109

Chapter 29: Procedure Calls

.....

111

Section 29.1: This is confusing. Why not just always use parentheses?

..... 111

Section 29.2: Implicit Call Syntax

.....

111

Section 29.3: Optional Arguments

.....

112

Section 29.4: Explicit Call Syntax

.....

112

Section 29.5: Return Values

.....

113

Chapter 30: Conditional Compilation

..... 114

Section 30.1: Changing code behavior at compile time

..... 114

Section 30.2: Using Declare Imports that work on all versions of Office

..... 115

Chapter 31: Object-Oriented VBA

..... 117

Section 31.1: Abstraction

.....

117

Section 31.2: Encapsulation

.....

117

Section 31.3: Polymorphism

.....

121

Chapter 32: Creating a Custom Class

..... 124

Section 32.1: Adding a Property to a Class

..... 124

Section 32.2: Class module scope, instancing and re-use

..... 125

Section 32.3: Adding Functionality to a Class

..... 125

Chapter 33: Interfaces

.....

127

Section 33.1: Multiple Interfaces in One Class - Flyable and Swimbable

..... 127

Section 33.2: Simple Interface - Flyable

..... 128

Chapter 34: Recursion

.....

130

Section 34.1: Factorials

.....

[130](#)

[Section 34.2: Folder Recursion](#)

[130](#)

[Chapter 35: Events](#)

[132](#)

[Section 35.1: Sources and Handlers](#)

[132](#)

[Section 35.2: Passing data back to the event source](#)

[134](#)

[Chapter 36: Scripting.Dictionary object](#)

[136](#)

[Section 36.1: Properties and Methods](#)

[136](#)

[Chapter 37: Working with ADO](#)

[138](#)

[Section 37.1: Making a connection to a data source](#)

[138](#)

[Section 37.2: Creating parameterized commands](#)

[138](#)

[Section 37.3: Retrieving records with a query](#)

[139](#)

[Section 37.4: Executing non-scalar functions](#)

[141](#)

[Chapter 38: Attributes](#)

[142](#)

[Section 38.1: VB_PredeclaredId](#)

[142](#)

[Section 38.2: VB_\[Var\]UserMemId](#)

[142](#)

[Section 38.3: VB_Exposed](#)

.....
[143](#)

[Section 38.4: VB_Description](#)

.....
[144](#)

[Section 38.5: VB_Name](#)

.....
[144](#)

[Section 38.6: VB_GlobalNameSpace](#)

.....
[144](#)

[Section 38.7: VB_Createable](#)

.....
[145](#)

[Chapter 39: User Forms](#)

.....
[146](#)

[Section 39.1: Best Practices](#)

.....
[146](#)

[Section 39.2: Handling QueryClose](#)

.....
[148](#)

[Chapter 40: CreateObject vs. GetObject](#)

..... [150](#)

[Section 40.1: Demonstrating GetObject and CreateObject](#)

..... [150](#)

[Chapter 41: Non-Latin Characters](#)

..... [151](#)

[Section 41.1: Non-Latin Text in VBA Code](#)

..... [151](#)

[Section 41.2: Non-Latin Identifiers and Language Coverage](#)

..... [152](#)

[Chapter 42: API Calls](#)

.....
[153](#)

[Section 42.1: Mac APIs](#)

.....	153
Section 42.2: Get total monitors and screen resolution	..... 153
Section 42.3: FTP and Regional APIs	.....
.....	154
Section 42.4: API declaration and usage	..... 157
Section 42.5: Windows API - Dedicated Module (1 of 2)	..... 159
Section 42.6: Windows API - Dedicated Module (2 of 2)	..... 163
Chapter 43: Automation or Using other applications Libraries	..... 168
Section 43.1: VBScript Regular Expressions	..... 168
Section 43.2: Scripting File System Object	..... 169
Section 43.3: Scripting Dictionary object	..... 169
Section 43.4: Internet Explorer Object	..... 170
Chapter 44: Macro security and signing of VBA-projects/-modules	..... 173
Section 44.1: Create a valid digital self-signed certificate SELF CERT.EXE	..... 173
Chapter 45: VBA Run-Time Errors	..... 183
Section 45.1: Run-time error '6': Overflow	..... 183
Section 45.2: Run-time error '9': Subscript out of range	..... 183
Section 45.3: Run-time error '13': Type mismatch	..... 184
Section 45.4: Run-time error '91': Object variable or With block variable not set	..... 184

[Section 45.5: Run-time error '20': Resume without error](#)

[..... 185](#)

[Section 45.6: Run-time error '3': Return without GoSub](#)

[..... 186](#)

[Chapter 46: Error Handling](#)

[188](#)

[Section 46.1: Avoiding error conditions](#)

[..... 188](#)

[Section 46.2: Custom Errors](#)

[188](#)

[Section 46.3: Resume keyword](#)

[189](#)

[Section 46.4: On Error statement](#)

[191](#)

[Credits](#)

[194](#)

[You may also like](#)

[196](#)

About

Please feel free to share this PDF with anyone for free, latest version of this book can be downloaded from: <https://goalkicker.com/VBABook>

This *VBA Notes for Professionals* book is compiled from [Stack Overflow Documentation](#), the content is written by the beautiful people at Stack Overflow. Text content is released under Creative Commons BY-SA, see credits at the end of this book whom contributed to the various chapters. Images may be copyright of their respective owners unless otherwise specified

This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes and is not affiliated with official VBA group(s) or company(s) nor Stack Overflow. All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective company owners

The information presented in this book is not guaranteed to be correct nor accurate, use at your own risk

Please send feedback and corrections to
web@petercv.com

Chapter 1: Getting started with VBA

Version Office Versions Release Date Notes Release Date

Vba6 ? - 2007 [Sometime after][1] 1992-06-30

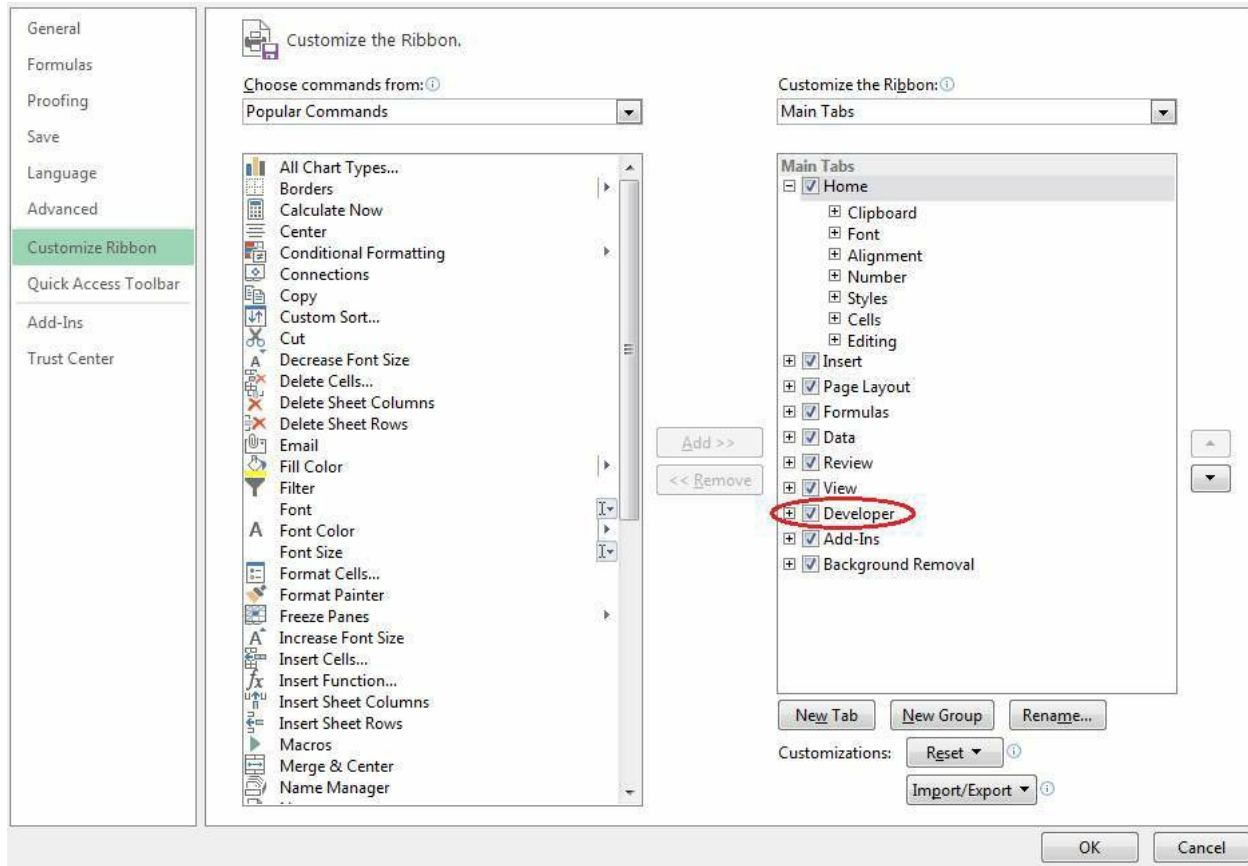
Vba7 2010 - 2016 [blog.techkit.com][2] 2010-04-15

VBA for Mac 2004, 2011 - 2016 2004-05-11

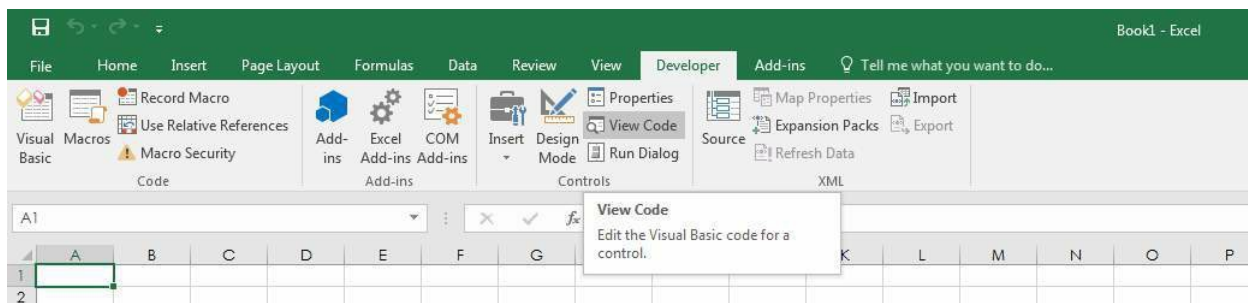
Section 1.1: Accessing the Visual Basic Editor in Microsoft Office

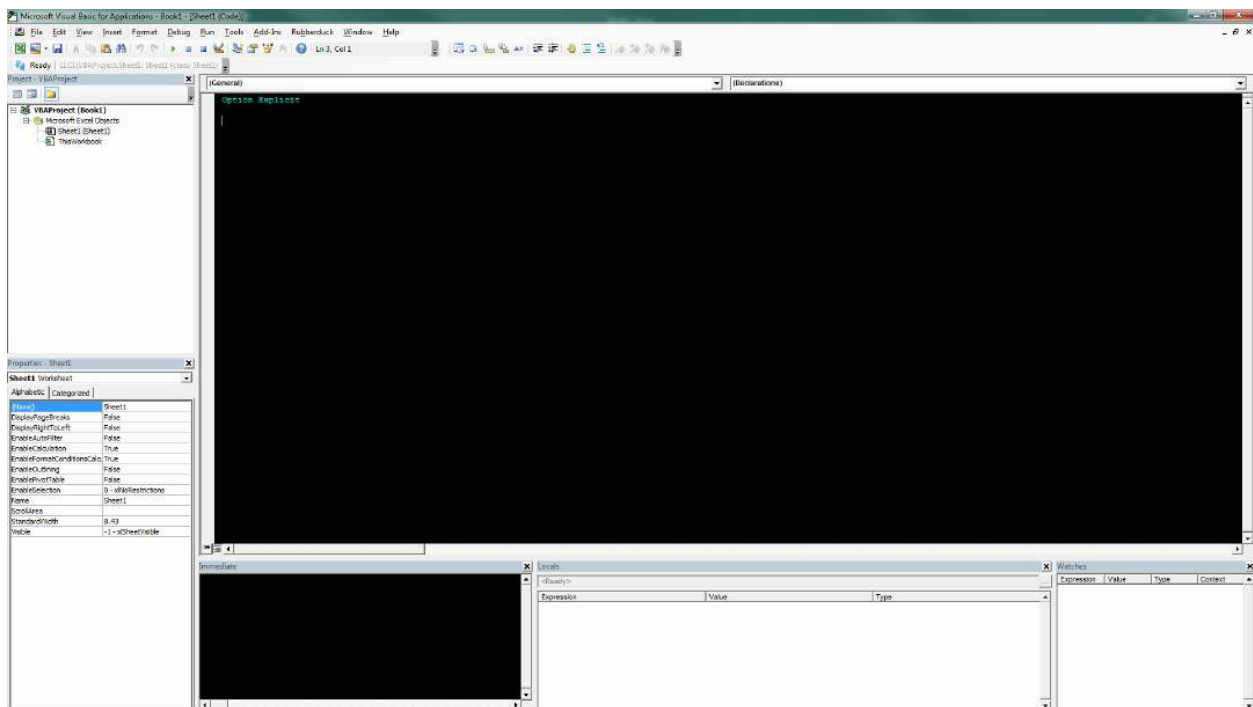
You can open the VB editor in any of the Microsoft Office applications by pressing Alt + F11 or going to the Developer tab and clicking on the "Visual Basic" button. If you don't see the Developer tab in the Ribbon, check if this is enabled.

By default the Developer tab is disabled. To enable the Developer tab go to File -> Options, select Customize Ribbon in the list on the left. In the right "Customize the Ribbon" treeview find the Developer tree item and set the check for the Developer checkbox to checked. Click Ok to close the Options dialog.



The Developer tab is now visible in the Ribbon on which you can click on "Visual Basic" to open the Visual Basic Editor. Alternatively you can click on "View Code" to directly view the code pane of the currently active element, e.g. WorkSheet, Chart, Shape.





You can use VBA to automate almost any action that can be performed interactively (manually) and also provide functionality that is not available in Microsoft Office. VBA can create a document, add text to it, format it, edit it, and save it, all without human intervention.

Section 1.2: Debugging

Debugging is a very powerful way to have a closer look and fix incorrectly working (or non working) code.

Run code step by step

First thing you need to do during debugging is to stop the code at specific locations and then run it line by line to see whether that happens what's expected.

Breakpoint (F9 , Debug - Toggle breakpoint): You can add a breakpoint to any executed line (e.g. not to declarations), when execution reaches that point it stops, and gives control to user.

You can also add the **Stop** keyword to a blank line to have the code stop at that location on runtime. This is useful if, for example, before declaration lines to which you can't add a breakpoint with F9 Step into (F8 , Debug - Step into): executes only one line of code, if that's a call of a user defined sub

/ function, then that's executed line by line.

Step over (Shift + F8 , Debug - Step over): executes one line of code, doesn't enter user defined subs / functions.

Step out (Ctrl + Shift + F8 , Debug - Step out): Exit current sub / function (run code until its end). Run to cursor (Ctrl + F8 , Debug - Run to cursor): run code until reaching the line with the cursor. You can use Debug.Print to print lines to the Immediate Window at runtime. You may also use Debug.? as a shortcut for Debug.Print

Watches window

Running code line by line is only the first step, we need to know more details and one tool for that is the watch window (View - Watch window), here you can see values of defined expressions. To add a variable to the watch window, either:

Right-click on it then select "Add watch". Right-click in watch window, select "Add watch". Go to Debug - Add watch.

When you add a new expression you can choose whether you just want to see it's value, or also break code execution when it's true or when its value changes.

Immediate Window

The immediate window allows you to execute arbitrary code or print items by preceeding them with either the Print keyword or a single question mark "?"
Some examples:

? ActiveSheet.Name - returns name of the active sheet Print

ActiveSheet.Name - returns the name of the active sheet ? foo - returns the value of foo*

x = 10 sets x to 10*

* Getting/Setting values for variables via the Immediate Window can only be done during runtime

Debugging best practices

Whenever your code doesn't work as expected first thing you should do is to read it again carefully, looking for mistakes.

If that doesn't help, then start debugging it; for short procedures it can be efficient to just execute it line by line, for longer ones you probably need to set breakpoints or breaks on watched expressions, the goal here is to find the line not working as expected.

Once you have the line which gives the incorrect result, but the reason is not yet clear, try to simplify expressions, or replace variables with constants, that can help understanding whether variables' value are wrong.

If you still can't solve it, and ask for help:

Include as small part of your code as possible for understanding of your problem. If the problem is not related to the value of variables, then replace them by constants. (so, instead of `Sheets(a*b*c+d^2).Range(addressOfRange)` write `Sheets(4).Range("A2")`) Describe which line gives the wrong behaviour, and what it is (error, wrong result...)

Section 1.3: First Module and Hello World

To start coding in the first place, you have to right click your VBA Project in the left list and add a new Module. Your first *Hello-World* Code could look like this:

```
Sub HelloWorld()  
MsgBox "Hello, World!"  
End Sub
```

To test it, hit the *Play*-Button in your Toolbar or simply hit the F5 key. Congratulations! You've built your first own VBA Module.

Chapter 2: Comments

Section 2.1: Apostrophe Comments

A comment is marked by an apostrophe ('), and ignored when the code executes. Comments help explain your code to future readers, including yourself.

Since all lines starting with a comment are ignored, they can also be used to prevent code from executing (while you debug or refactor). Placing an apostrophe ' before your code turns it into a comment. (This is called *commenting out* the line.)

Sub InlineDocumentation()

'Comments start with an ""

'They can be place before a line of code, which prevents the line from executing 'Debug.Print "Hello World"

'They can also be placed after a statement

'The statement still executes, until the compiler arrives at the comment

Debug.Print "Hello World" *'Prints a welcome message*

'Comments can have 0 indention....

'... or as much as needed

"" Comments can contain multiple apostrophes ""

'Comments can span lines (using line continuations) _

but this can make **for** hard **to** read code

'If you need to have mult-line comments, it is often easier to

'use an apostrophe on each line

'The continued statement syntax (:) is treated as part of the comment, so

'it is not possible to place an executable statement after a comment

'This won't run : Debug.Print "Hello World"

End Sub

'Comments can appear inside or outside a procedure

Section 2.2: REM Comments

Sub RemComments()

Rem Comments start **with** "Rem" (VBA will change any alternate casing **to** "Rem") **Rem** is an abbreviation **of** Remark, **and** similar **to** DOS syntax

Rem Is a legacy approach **to** adding comments, **and** apostrophes should be preferred

Rem Comments CANNOT appear after a statement, use the apostrophe

syntax instead **Rem** Unless they are preceded **by** the instruction separator token

Debug.Print "Hello World": **Rem** prints a welcome message

Debug.Print "Hello World" *'Prints a welcome message*

'Rem cannot be immediately followed by the following characters

"!,@,#,\$,%,&" 'Whereas the apostrophe syntax can be followed by any printable character.

End Sub Rem Comments can appear inside **or** outside a procedure

Chapter 3: String Literals - Escaping, nonprintable characters and line continuations

Section 3.1: Escaping the " character

VBA syntax requires that a string-literal appear within " marks, so when your string needs to *contain* quotation marks, you'll need to escape/prepend the " character with an extra " so that VBA understands that you intend the "" to be interpreted as a " string.

'The following 2 lines produce the same output

Debug.Print "The man said, ""Never use air-quotes"""

Debug.Print "The man said, " & """" & "Never use air-quotes" & """"

'Output:

'The man said, "Never use air-quotes"

'The man said, "Never use air-quotes"

Section 3.2: Assigning long string literals

The VBA editor only allows 1023 characters per line, but typically only the first 100-150 characters are visible without scrolling. If you need to assign long string literals, but you want to keep your code readable, you'll need to use line-continuations and concatenation to assign your string.

Debug.Print "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. " & _
"Integer hendrerit maximus arcu, ut elementum odio varius " & _ "nec.
Integer ipsum enim, iaculis et egestas ac, condiment" & _ "um ut tellus."

'Output:

'Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Integer hendrerit maximus arcu, ut elementum odio varius nec. Integer ipsum enim, iaculis et egestas ac, condimentum ut tellus.

VBA will let you use a limited number of line-continuations (the actual number varies by the length of each line within the continued-block), so if you have very long strings, you'll need to assign and re-assign with concatenation.

Dim loremIpsum **As** String

'Assign the first part of the string

loremIpsum = "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. " & _

"Integer hendrerit maximus arcu, ut elementum odio varius " 'Re-assign with the previous value AND the next section of the string loremIpsum =
loremIpsum & _

"nec. Integer ipsum enim, iaculis et egestas ac, condimentum ut tellus."

Debug.Print loremIpsum

'Output:

'Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit. Integer hendrerit maximus arcu, ut elementum odio varius nec. Integer ipsum enim, iaculis et egestas ac, condimentum ut tellus.

Section 3.3: Using VBA string constants

VBA defines a number of string constants for special characters like: vbCr : Carriage-Return 'Same as "\r" in C style languages. vbLf : Line-Feed 'Same as "\n" in C style languages. vbCrLf : Carriage-Return & Line-Feed (a new-line in Windows) vbTab: Tab Character
vbNullString: an empty string, like ""

You can use these constants with concatenation and other string functions to build string-literals with specialcharacters.

Debug.Print "Hello " & vbCrLf & "World" *'Output:*

*'Hello
'World*

Debug.Print vbTab & "Hello" & vbTab & "World" *'Output:
' Hello World*

Dim EmptyString **As String** EmptyString = vbNullString Debug.Print
EmptyString = "" *'Output:
'True*

Using vbNullString is considered better practice than the equivalent value of "" due to differences in how the code is compiled. Strings are accessed via a pointer to an allocated area of memory, and the VBA compiler is smart enough to use a null pointer to represent vbNullString. The literal "" is allocated memory as if it were a String typed Variant, making the use of the constant much more efficient:

Debug.Print StrPtr(vbNullString) *'Prints 0.*
Debug.Print StrPtr("") *'Prints a memory address.*

Chapter 4: VBA Option Keyword

Option Explicit
Compare Text
Compare Binary

Detail

Require variable declaration in the module it's specified in (ideally all of them); with this option specified, using an undeclared (/misspelled) variable becomes a compilation error. Makes the module's string comparisons be case-insensitive, based on system locale, prioritizing alphabetical equivalency (e.g. "a" = "A").

Default string comparison mode. Makes the module's string comparisons be case sensitive, comparing strings using the binary representation / numeric value of each character (e.g. ASCII).

Compare Database (MS-Access only) Makes the module's string comparisons work the way they would in an SQL

statement.

Prevents the module's **Public** member from being accessed from outside of the project that Private Module the module resides in, effectively hiding procedures from the host application (i.e. not available to use as macros or user-defined functions).

Default setting. Sets the implicit array lower bound to 0 in a module. When an array is declared `Option Base 0` without an explicit lower boundary value, 0 will be used.
Sets the implicit array lower bound to 1 in a module. When an array is declared without an `Option Base 1` explicit lower boundary value, 1 will be used.

Section 4.1: Option Explicit

It is deemed best practice to always use **Option Explicit** in VBA as it forces the developer to declare all their variables before use. This has other benefits too, such as auto-capitalization for declared variable names and IntelliSense.

Option Explicit

Sub OptionExplicit()

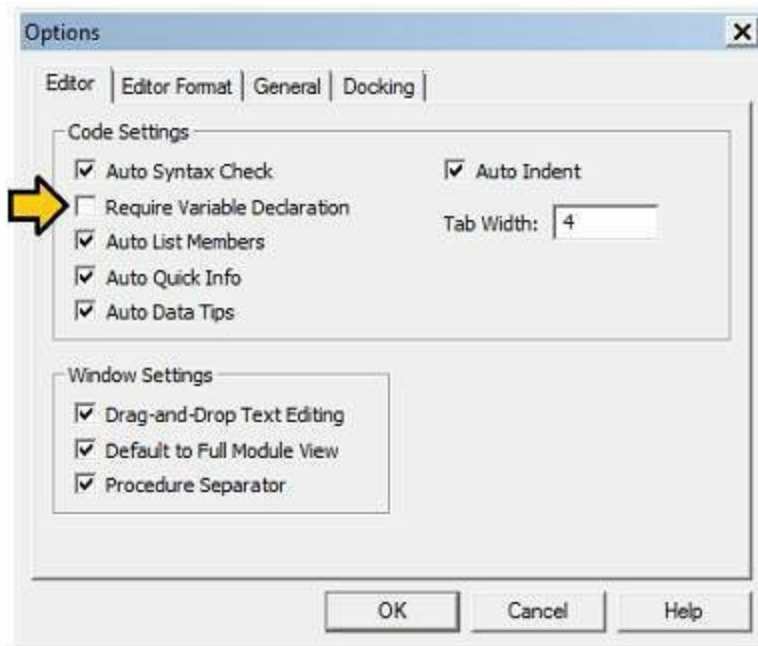
Dim a **As** Integer

a = 5

b = 10 *// Causes compile error as 'b' is not declared*

End Sub

Setting **Require Variable Declaration** within the VBE's Tools ► Options ► Editor property page will put the **Option Explicit** statement at the top of each newly created code sheet.



This will avoid silly coding mistakes like misspellings as well as influencing you to use the correct variable type in the variable declaration. (Some more examples are given at ALWAYS Use "Option Explicit".)

Section 4.2: Option Base {0 | 1}

Option Base is used to declare the default lower bound of **array** elements. It is declared at module level and is valid only for the current module. By default (and thus if no Option Base is specified), the Base is 0. Which means that the first element of any array declared in the module has an index of 0.

If **Option** Base **1** is specified, the first array element has the index 1

Example in Base 0 :

Option Base **0**

Sub BaseZero()

Dim myStrings **As** Variant

' Create an array out of the Variant, having 3 fruits elements

myStrings = Array("Apple", "Orange", "Peach")

Debug.Print LBound(myStrings) *' This Prints "0"*

Debug.Print UBound(myStrings) *' This print "2", because we have 3 elements beginning at 0 -> 0,1,2*

For i = **0** **To** UBound(myStrings)

Debug.Print myStrings(i) ' *This will print "Apple", then "Orange", then "Peach"*

Next i

End Sub

Same Example with Base 1

Option Base 1

Sub BaseOne()

Dim myStrings **As** Variant

' *Create an array out of the Variant, having 3 fruits elements* myStrings =
Array("Apple", "Orange", "Peach")

Debug.Print LBound(myStrings) ' *This Prints "1"*

Debug.Print UBound(myStrings) ' *This print "3", because we have 3
elements beginning at 1 -> 1,2,3*

For i = 0 **To** UBound(myStrings)

Debug.Print myStrings(i) ' *This triggers an error 9 "Subscript out of range"*

Next i

End Sub

The second example generated a **Subscript out of range (Error 9)** at the first loop stage because an attempt to access the index 0 of the array was made, and this index doesn't exist as the module is declared with Base 1

The correct code with Base 1 is : **For** i = 1 **To** UBound(myStrings)

Debug.Print myStrings(i) ' *This will print "Apple", then "Orange", then "Peach"*

Next i

It should be noted that the **Split function** always creates an array with a zero-based element index regardless of any **Option** Base setting. Examples on how to use the **Split** function can be found here

Split Function

Returns a zero-based, one-dimensional array containing a specified number of substrings.

In Excel, the Range.Value and Range.Formula properties for a multi-celled range always returns a 1-based 2D Variant array.

Likewise, in ADO, the Recordset.GetRows method always returns a 1-based 2D array.

One recommended 'best practice' is to always use the **LBound** and **UBound** functions to determine the extents of an array.

'for single dimensioned array

```
Debug.Print LBound(arr) & ":" & UBound(arr) Dim i As Long  
For i = LBound(arr) To UBound(arr)
```

```
Debug.Print arr(i)
```

```
Next i
```

'for two dimensioned array

```
Debug.Print LBound(arr, 1) & ":" & UBound(arr, 1) Debug.Print  
LBound(arr, 2) & ":" & UBound(arr, 2) Dim i As long, j As Long  
For i = LBound(arr, 1) To UBound(arr, 1)
```

```
For j = LBound(arr, 2) To UBound(arr, 2) Debug.Print arr(i, j)
```

```
Next j
```

```
Next i
```

The **Option** Base 1 must be at the top of every code module where an array is created or re-dimensioned if arrays are to be consistently created with an lower boundary of 1.

Section 4.3: Option Compare {Binary | Text | Database}

Option Compare Binary

Binary comparison makes all checks for string equality within a module/class case *sensitive*. Technically, with this option, string comparisons are performed using sort order of the binary representations of each character.

A < B < E < Z < a < b < e < z

If no Option Compare is specified in a module, Binary is used by default.

```
Option Compare Binary
```

```
Sub CompareBinary()
```

```
Dim foo As String Dim bar As String
```

```
'// Case sensitive foo = "abc"
```

```
bar = "ABC"
```

```
Debug.Print (foo = bar) '// Prints "False"
```

```
'// Still differentiates accented characters foo = "ábc"
```

```
bar = "abc"
```

```
Debug.Print (foo = bar) // Prints "False"
```

```
// "b" (Chr 98) is greater than "a" (Chr 97) foo = "a"
```

```
bar = "b"
```

```
Debug.Print (bar > foo) // Prints "True"
```

```
// "b" (Chr 98) is NOT greater than " á" (Chr 225) foo = "á"
```

```
bar = "b"
```

```
Debug.Print (bar > foo) // Prints "False"
```

End Sub

Option Compare Text

Option Compare Text makes all string comparisons within a module/class use a case *insensitive* comparison.

(A | a) < (B | b) < (Z | z)

Option Compare Text

Sub CompareText()

Dim foo **As** String **Dim** bar **As** String

```
// Case insensitivity foo = "abc"
```

```
bar = "ABC"
```

```
Debug.Print (foo = bar) // Prints "True"
```

```
// Still differentiates accented characters foo = "ábc"
```

```
bar = "abc"
```

```
Debug.Print (foo = bar) // Prints "False"
```

```
// "b" still comes after "a" or " á" foo = "á"
```

```
bar = "b"
```

```
Debug.Print (bar > foo) // Prints "True"
```

End Sub

Option Compare Database

Option Compare Database is only available within MS Access. It sets the

module/class to use the current database settings to determine whether to use Text or Binary mode.

Note: The use of this setting is discouraged unless the module is used for writing custom Access UDFs (User defined functions) that should treat text comparisons in the same manner as SQL queries in that database.

Chapter 5: Declaring Variables

Section 5.1: Type Hints

Type Hints are **heavily** discouraged. They exist and are documented here for historical and backward-compatibility reasons. You should use the **As** [DataType] syntax instead.

Public Sub ExampleDeclaration()

Dim someInteger% *'% Equivalent to "As Integer"*

Dim someLong& *'& Equivalent to "As Long"*

Dim someDecimal@ *'@ Equivalent to "As Currency"*

Dim someSingle! *'! Equivalent to "As Single"*

Dim someDouble# *'# Equivalent to "As Double"*

Dim someString\$ *'\$ Equivalent to "As String"*

Dim someLongLong^ *'^ Equivalent to "As LongLong" in 64-bit VBA hosts*

End Sub

Type hints significantly decrease code readability and encourage a legacy **Hungarian Notation** which *also* hinders readability:

Dim strFile\$ **Dim** iFile%

Instead, declare variables closer to their usage and name things for what they're used, not after their type:

Dim path **As String** **Dim** handle **As Integer**

Type hints can also be used on literals, to enforce a specific type. By default, a numeric literal smaller than 32,768 will be interpreted as an **Integer** literal, but with a type hint you can control that:

Dim foo *'implicit Variant*

foo = 42& *'foo is now a Long*

foo = 42# *'foo is now a Double*

Debug.Print TypeName(42!) *'prints "Single"*

Type hints are usually not needed on literals, because they would be assigned to a variable declared with an explicit type, or implicitly converted to the appropriate type when passed as parameters. Implicit conversions can be avoided using one of the explicit type conversion functions:

'Calls procedure DoSomething and passes a literal 42 as a Long using a type hint DoSomething 42&

'Calls procedure DoSomething and passes a literal 42 explicitly converted to a Long DoSomething CLng(42)

String-returning built-in functions

The majority of the built-in functions that handle strings come in two versions: A loosely typed version that returns a Variant, and a strongly typed version (ending with \$) that returns a [String](#). Unless you are assigning the return value to a Variant, you should prefer the version that returns a [String](#) - otherwise there is an implicit conversion of the return value.

Debug.Print Left(foo, 2) *'Left returns a Variant* Debug.Print Left\$(foo, 2)
'Left\$ returns a String

These functions are:

VBA.Conversion.Error -> VBA.Conversion.Error\$

VBA.Conversion.Hex -> VBA.Conversion.Hex\$

VBA.Conversion.Oct -> VBA.Conversion.Oct\$

VBA.Conversion.Str -> VBA.Conversion.Str\$

VBA.FileSystem.CurDir -> VBA.FileSystem.CurDir\$

VBA.[_HiddenModule].Input -> VBA.[_HiddenModule].Input\$ VBA.

[_HiddenModule].InputB -> VBA.[_HiddenModule].InputB\$

VBA.Interaction.Command -> VBA.Interaction.Command\$

VBA.Interaction.Envirion -> VBA.Interaction.Envirion\$ VBA.Strings.Chr ->

VBA.Strings.Chr\$

VBA.Strings.ChrB -> VBA.Strings.ChrB\$

VBA.Strings.ChrW -> VBA.Strings.ChrW\$

VBA.Strings.Format -> VBA.Strings.Format\$

VBA.Strings.LCase -> VBA.Strings.LCase\$

VBA.Strings.Left -> VBA.Strings.Left\$

VBA.Strings.LeftB -> VBA.Strings.LeftB\$

VBA.Strings.LTrim -> VBA.Strings.LTrim\$

VBA.Strings.Mid -> VBA.Strings.Mid\$
VBA.Strings.MidB -> VBA.Strings.MidB\$
VBA.Strings.Right -> VBA.Strings.Right\$
VBA.Strings.RightB -> VBA.Strings.RightB\$
VBA.Strings.RTrim -> VBA.Strings.RTrim\$
VBA.Strings.Space -> VBA.Strings.Space\$
VBA.Strings.Str -> VBA.Strings.Str\$
VBA.Strings.String -> VBA.Strings.String\$
VBA.Strings.Trim -> VBA.Strings.Trim\$
VBA.Strings.UCase -> VBA.Strings.UCase\$

Note that these are function *aliases*, not quite *type hints*. The Left function corresponds to the hidden B_Var_Left function, while the Left\$ version corresponds to the hidden B_Str_Left function.

In very early versions of VBA the \$ sign isn't an allowed character and the function name had to be enclosed in square brackets. In Word Basic, there were many, many more functions that returned strings that ended in \$.

Section 5.2: Variables

Scope

A variable can be declared (in increasing visibility level):

At procedure level, using the **Dim** keyword in any procedure; a *local variable*.

At module level, using the **Private** keyword in any type of module; a *private field*.

At instance level, using the **Friend** keyword in any type of class module; a *friend field*. At instance level, using the **Public** keyword in any type of class module; a *public field*. Globally, using the **Public** keyword in a *standard module*; a *global variable*.

Variables should always be declared with the smallest possible scope: prefer passing parameters to procedures, rather than declaring global variables.

See Access Modifiers for more information.

Local variables

Use the **Dim** keyword to declare a *local variable*:

Dim identifierName [**As** Type][, identifierName [**As** Type], ...]

The [**As** Type] part of the declaration syntax is optional. When specified, it sets the variable's data type, which determines how much memory will be allocated to that variable. This declares a **String** variable:

Dim identifierName **As** **String**

When a type is not specified, the type is implicitly **Variant**:

Dim identifierName *'As Variant is implicit'*

The VBA syntax also supports declaring multiple variables in a single statement:

Dim someString **As** **String**, someVariant, someValue **As** **Long**

Notice that the [**As** Type] has to be specified for each variable (other than 'Variant' ones). This is a relatively common trap:

Dim integer1, integer2, integer3 **As** **Integer** *'Only integer3 is an Integer. The rest are Variant. Static variables*

Local variables can also be **Static**. In VBA the **Static** keyword is used to make a variable "remember" the value it had, last time a procedure was called:

Private Sub DoSomething()

Static values **As** Collection **If** values **Is Nothing Then**

Set values = **New** Collection values.Add "foo"
values.Add "bar"

End If

DoSomethingElse values

End Sub

Here the values collection is declared as a **Static** local; because it's an *object variable*, it is initialized to **Nothing**. The condition that follows the declaration verifies if the object reference was **Set** before - if it's the first time the procedure runs, the collection gets initialized. DoSomethingElse might be adding or removing items, and they'll still be in the collection next time DoSomething is called.

Alternative

VBA's **Static** keyword can easily be misunderstood - *especially* by seasoned

programmers that usually work in other languages. In many languages, **static** is used to make a class member (field, property, method, ...) belong to the *type* rather than to the *instance*. Code in **static** context cannot reference code in *instance* context. The VBA **Static** keyword means something wildly different.

Often, a **Static** local could just as well be implemented as a **Private**, module-level variable (field) - however this challenges the principle by which a variable should be declared with the smallest possible scope; trust your instincts, use whichever you prefer - both will work... but using **Static** without understanding what it does could lead to interesting bugs.

Dim vs. Private

The **Dim** keyword is legal at procedure and module levels; its usage at module level is equivalent to using the **Private** keyword:

Option Explicit

```
Dim privateField1 As Long 'same as Private privateField2 as Long Private
privateField2 As Long 'same as Dim privateField2 as Long
```

The **Private** keyword is only legal at module level; this invites reserving **Dim** for local variables and declaring module variables with **Private**, especially with the contrasting **Public** keyword that would have to be used anyway to declare a public member. Alternatively use **Dim** everywhere - what matters is *consistency*:

"Private fields"

DO use **Private** to declare a module-level variable. **DO** use **Dim** to declare a local variable.

DO NOT use **Dim** to declare a module-level variable.

"Dim everywhere"

DO use **Dim** to declare anything private/local.

DO NOT use **Private** to declare a module-level variable. **AVOID** declaring **Public** fields.*

*In general, one should avoid declaring **Public** or **Global** fields anyway.

Fields

A variable declared at module level, in the *declarations section* at the top of the module body, is a *field*. A **Public** field declared in a *standard module* is a *global variable*:

Public PublicField **As** Long

A variable with a global scope can be accessed from anywhere, including other VBA projects that would reference the project it's declared in.

To make a variable global/public, but only visible from within the project, use the **Friend** modifier:

Friend FriendField **As** Long

This is especially useful in add-ins, where the intent is that other VBA projects reference the add-in project and can consume the public API.

Friend FriendField **As** Long *'public within the project, aka for "friend" code*

Public PublicField **As** Long *'public within and beyond the project*

Friend fields are not available in standard modules.

Instance Fields

A variable declared at module level, in the *declarations section* at the top of the body of a class module (including ThisWorkbook, ThisDocument, Worksheet, UserForm and *class modules*), is an *instance field*: it only exists as long as there's an *instance* of the class around.

'> Class1

Option Explicit

Public PublicField **As** Long

'> Module1

Option Explicit

Public Sub DoSomething()

'Class1.PublicField means nothing here **With New** Class1

.PublicField = 42

End With

'Class1.PublicField means nothing here

End Sub

Encapsulating fields

Instance data is often kept **Private**, and dubbed *encapsulated*. A private field can be exposed using a **Property** procedure. To expose a private variable publicly without giving write access to the caller, a class module (or a standard module) implements a **Property Get** member:

Option Explicit

Private encapsulated **As Long**

Public Property Get SomeValue() **As Long** SomeValue = encapsulated
End Property

Public Sub DoSomething() encapsulated = 42
End Sub

The class itself can modify the encapsulated value, but the calling code can only access the **Public** members (and **Friend** members, if the caller is in the same project).

To allow the caller to modify:

An encapsulated **value**, a module exposes a **Property Let** member. An encapsulated **object reference**, a module exposes a **Property Set** member.

Section 5.3: Constants (Const)

If you have a value that never changes in your application, you can define a named constant and use it in place of a literal value.

You can use Const only at module or procedure level. This means the declaration context for a variable must be a class, structure, module, procedure, or block, and cannot be a source file, namespace, or interface.

Public Const GLOBAL_CONSTANT **As String** = "Project Version
#1.000.000.001" **Private Const** MODULE_CONSTANT **As String** =
"Something relevant to this Module"

Public Sub ExampleDeclaration() **Const** SOME_CONSTANT **As String** =
"Hello World"

Const PI **As Double** = 3.141592653
End Sub

Whilst it can be considered good practice to specify Constant types, it isn't strictly required. Not specifying the type will still result in the correct type:

Public Const GLOBAL_CONSTANT = "Project Version #1.000.000.001"
'Still a string **Public Sub** ExampleDeclaration()

Const SOME_CONSTANT = "Hello World" *'Still a string*
Const DERIVED_CONSTANT = SOME_CONSTANT
'DERIVED_CONSTANT is also a string **Const** VAR_CONSTANT **As**
Variant = SOME_CONSTANT *'VAR_CONSTANT is Variant/String*

Const PI = 3.141592653 *'Still a double*
Const DERIVED_PI = PI *'DERIVED_PI is also a double* **Const** VAR_PI **As**
Variant = PI *'VAR_PI is Variant/Double*

End Sub

Note that this is specific to Constants and in contrast to variables where not specifying the type results in a Variant type.

While it is possible to explicitly declare a constant as a String, it is not possible to declare a constant as a string using fixed-width string syntax

'This is a valid 5 character string constant **Const** FOO **As** String =
"ABCDE"

'This is not valid syntax for a 5 character string constant **Const** FOO **As**
String * 5 = "ABCDE"

Section 5.4: Declaring Fixed-Length Strings

In VBA, Strings can be declared with a specific length; they are automatically padded or truncated to maintain that length as declared.

Public Sub TwoTypesOfStrings()
Dim FixedLengthString **As** String * 5 *' declares a string of 5 characters*
Dim NormalString **As** String
Debug.Print FixedLengthString *' Prints " "*
Debug.Print NormalString *' Prints ""*
FixedLengthString = "123"
NormalString = "456"
' FixedLengthString now equals "123 "
' NormalString now equals "456"
FixedLengthString = "123456"
NormalString = "456789"

'FixedLengthString now equals "12345"

'NormalString now equals "456789"

End Sub

Section 5.5: When to use a Static variable

A Static variable declared locally is not destructed and does not lose its value when the Sub procedure is exited. Subsequent calls to the procedure do not require re-initialization or assignment although you may want to 'zero' any remembered value(s).

These are particularly useful when late binding an object in a 'helper' sub that is called repeatedly.

Snippet 1: Reuse a Scripting.Dictionary object across many worksheets

Option Explicit

Sub main()

Dim w **As** Long

For w = 1 **To** Worksheets.Count

processDictionary ws:=Worksheets(w)

Next w

End Sub

Sub processDictionary(ws **As** Worksheet)

Dim i **As** Long, rng **As** Range

Static dict **As** Object

If dict **Is Nothing Then**

'initialize and set the dictionary object

Set dict = CreateObject("Scripting.Dictionary")

dict.CompareMode = vbTextCompare

Else

'remove all pre-existing dictionary entries

' this may or may not be desired if a single dictionary of entries

' from all worksheets is preferred

dict.RemoveAll

End If

With ws

*'work with a fresh dictionary object for each worksheet
' without constructing/deconstructing a new object each time
' or do not clear the dictionary upon subsequent uses and
' build a dictionary containing entries from all worksheets*

End With End Sub

Snippet 2: Create a worksheet UDF that late binds the VBScript.RegExp object

Option Explicit

Function numbersOnly(str **As** String, _
Optional delim **As** String = ", ") **Dim** n **As** Long, nums() **As** Variant
Static rgx **As** Object, cmat **As** Object

*'with rgx as static, it only has to be created once 'this is beneficial when
filling a long column with this UDF* **If** rgx **Is Nothing Then**

Set rgx = CreateObject("VBScript.RegExp")

Else

Set cmat = **Nothing**

End If

With rgx

.Global = **True**

.MultiLine = **True**

.Pattern = "[0-9]{1,999}"

If .Test(str) **Then**

Set cmat = .Execute(str)

'resize the nums array to accept the matches **ReDim** nums(cmat.Count **1**)

'populate the nums array with the matches **For** n = LBound(nums) **To**
UBound(nums)

nums(n) = cmat.Item(n)

Next n

'convert the nums array to a delimited string numbersOnly = Join(nums, delim)

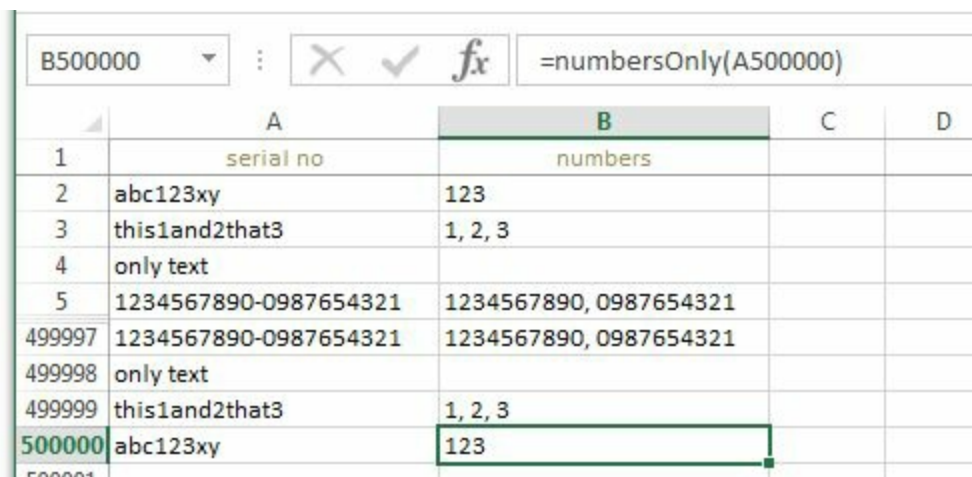
Else

numbersOnly = vbNullString

End If

End With

End Function



	A	B	C	D
1	serial no	numbers		
2	abc123xy	123		
3	this1and2that3	1, 2, 3		
4	only text			
5	1234567890-0987654321	1234567890, 0987654321		
499997	1234567890-0987654321	1234567890, 0987654321		
499998	only text			
499999	this1and2that3	1, 2, 3		
500000	abc123xy	123		

Example

of UDF with Static object filled through a half-million rows

*Elapsed times to fill 500K rows with UDF:

- with **Dim rgx As Object**: 148.74 seconds
- with **Static rgx As Object**: 26.07 seconds

* These should be considered for relative comparison only. Your own results will vary according to the complexity and scope of the operations performed.

Remember that a UDF is not calculated once in the lifetime of a workbook. Even a non-volatile UDF will recalculate whenever the values within the range(s) it references are subject to change. Each subsequent recalculation event only increases the benefits of a statically declared variable.

A Static variable is available for the lifetime of the module, not the procedure or function in which it was declared and assigned. Static variables can only be declared locally.

Static variable hold many of the same properties of a private module level variable but with a more restricted scope.

Related reference:

[Static \(Visual Basic\)](#)

Section 5.6: Implicit And Explicit Declaration

If a code module does not contain **Option Explicit** at the top of the module, then the compiler will automatically (that is, "implicitly") create variables for you when you use them. They will default to variable type Variant.

Public Sub ExampleDeclaration()

someVariable = 10 '

someOtherVariable = "Hello World"

'Both of these variables are of the Variant type.

End Sub

In the above code, if **Option Explicit** is specified, the code will interrupt because it is missing the required **Dim** statements for someVariable and someOtherVariable.

Option Explicit

Public Sub ExampleDeclaration()

Dim someVariable **As Long** someVariable = 10

Dim someOtherVariable **As String** someOtherVariable = "Hello World"

End Sub

It is considered best practice to use Option Explicit in code modules, to ensure that you declare all variables. See VBA Best Practices how to set this option by default.

Section 5.7: Access Modifiers

The **Dim** statement should be reserved for local variables. At module-level, prefer explicit access modifiers:

Private for private fields, which can only be accessed within the module they're declared in. **Public** for public fields and global variables, which can

be accessed by any calling code. **Friend** for variables public within the project, but inaccessible to other referencing VBA projects (relevant for add-ins)

Global can also be used for **Public** fields in standard modules, but is illegal in class modules and is obsolete anyway - prefer the **Public** modifier instead. This modifier isn't legal for procedures either.

Access modifiers are applicable to variables and procedures alike.

Private ModuleVariable **As String** **Public** GlobalVariable **As String**

Private Sub ModuleProcedure()

ModuleVariable = "This can only be done from within the same Module"

End Sub

Public Sub GlobalProcedure()

GlobalVariable = "This can be done from any Module within this Project"

End Sub **Option Private Module**

Public parameterless **Sub** procedures in standard modules are exposed as macros and can be attached to controls and keyboard shortcuts in the host document.

Conversely, public **Function** procedures in standard modules are exposed as user-defined functions (UDF's) in the host application.

Specifying **Option Private Module** at the top of a standard module prevents its members from being exposed as macros and UDF's to the host application.

Chapter 6: Declaring and assigning strings

Section 6.1: Assignment to and from a byte array

Strings can be assigned directly to byte arrays and visa-versa. Remember that Strings are stored in a Multi-Byte Character Set (see Remarks below) so only every other index of the resulting array will be the portion of the character that falls within the ASCII range.

Dim bytes() **As Byte**

Dim example **As String**

example = "Testing."

bytes = example *'Direct assignment.*

'Loop through the characters. Step 2 is used due to wide encoding.

```
Dim i As Long
For i = LBound(bytes) To UBound(bytes) Step 2
    Debug.Print Chr$(bytes(i)) 'Prints T, e, s, t, i, n, g, .
Next
```

```
Dim reverted As String
reverted = bytes 'Direct assignment.
Debug.Print reverted 'Prints "Testing."
```

Section 6.2: Declare a string constant

```
Const appName As String = "The App For That"
```

Section 6.3: Declare a variable-width string variable

```
Dim surname As String 'surname can accept strings of variable length
surname = "Smith"
surname = "Johnson"
```

Section 6.4: Declare and assign a fixed-width string

```
'Declare and assign a 1-character fixed-width string
Dim middleInitial As String * 1 'middleInitial must be 1 character in length
middleInitial = "M"
```

```
'Declare and assign a 2-character fixed-width string `stateCode`,
'must be 2 characters in length
Dim stateCode As String * 2
stateCode = "TX"
```

Section 6.5: Declare and assign a string array

```
'Declare, dimension and assign a string array with 3 elements
Dim departments(2) As String
departments(0) = "Engineering"
departments(1) = "Finance"
```

```
departments(2) = "Marketing"
```

'Declare an undimensioned string array and then dynamically assign with the results of a function that returns a string array

```
Dim stateNames() As String  
stateNames = VBA.Strings.Split("Texas;California;New York", ";")
```

'Declare, dimension and assign a fixed-width string array **Dim** stateCodes(2)
As String * 2

```
stateCodes(0) = "TX"  
stateCodes(1) = "CA"  
stateCodes(2) = "NY"
```

Section 6.6: Assign specific characters within a string using Mid statement

VBA offers a Mid function for *returning* substrings within a string, but it also offers the Mid *Statement* which can be used to assign substrings or individual characters within a string.

The Mid function will typically appear on the right-hand-side of an assignment statement or in a condition, but the Mid Statement typically appears on the left hand side of an assignment statement.

```
Dim surname As String surname = "Smith"
```

'Use the Mid statement to change the 3rd character in a string Mid(surname,
3, 1) = "y"

```
Debug.Print surname
```

'Output: 'Smyth

Note: If you need to assign to individual *bytes* in a string instead of individual *characters* within a string (see the Remarks below regarding the Multi-Byte Character Set), the MidB statement can be used. In this instance, the second argument for the MidB statement is the 1-based position of the byte where the replacement will start so the equivalent line to the example above would be MidB(surname, 5, 2) = "y".

Chapter 7: Concatenating strings

Section 7.1: Concatenate an array of strings using the Join function

'Declare and assign a string array

```
Dim widgetNames(2) As String
```

```
widgetNames(0) = "foo"
```

```
widgetNames(1) = "bar"
```

```
widgetNames(2) = "fizz"
```

'Concatenate with Join and separate each element with a 3-character string

```
concatenatedString = VBA.Strings.Join(widgetNames, " > ")
```

'concatenatedString = "foo > bar > fizz"

'Concatenate with Join and separate each element with a zero-width string

```
concatenatedString = VBA.Strings.Join(widgetNames, vbNullString)
```

'concatenatedString = "foobarfizz"

Section 7.2: Concatenate strings using the & operator

```
Const string1 As String = "foo"
```

```
Const string2 As String = "bar"
```

```
Const string3 As String = "fizz"
```

```
Dim concatenatedString As String
```

'Concatenate two strings

```
concatenatedString = string1 & string2 'concatenatedString = "foobar"
```

'Concatenate three strings

```
concatenatedString = string1 & string2 & string3 'concatenatedString =  
"foobarfizz"
```

Chapter 8: Frequently used string manipulation

Quick examples for MID LEFT and RIGHT string functions using INSTR
FIND and LEN.

How do you find the text between two search terms (Say: after a colon and before a comma)? How do you get the remainder of a word (using MID or using RIGHT)? Which of these functions use Zero-based params and return codes vs One-based? What happens when things go wrong? How do they handle empty strings, unfound results and negative numbers?

Section 8.1: String manipulation frequently used examples

Better MID() and other string extraction examples, currently lacking from the web. Please help me make a good example, or complete this one here. Something like this:

```
DIM strEmpty as String, strNull as String, theText as String
DIM idx as Integer
DIM letterCount as Integer
DIM result as String
```

```
strNull = NOTHING
strEmpty = ""
theText = "1234, 78910"
```

```
' -----
' Extract the word after the comma ", " and before "910" result: "78" ***
' -----
```

```
' Get index (place) of comma using INSTR
idx = ... ' some explanation here
if idx < ... ' check if no comma found in text
```

```
' or get index of comma using FIND
idx = ... ' some explanation here... Note: The difference is...
if idx < ... ' check if no comma found in text
```

```
result = MID(theText, ..., LEN(...
' Retrieve remaining word after the comma
result = MID(theText, idx+1, LEN(theText) - idx+1)
' Get word until the comma using LEFT
result = LEFT(theText, idx 1)
```

' Get remaining text after the comma-and-space using RIGHT

result = ...

' What happens when things go wrong

result = MID(strNothing, 1, 2) *' this causes ...*

result = MID(strEmpty, 1, 2) *' which causes...*

result = MID(theText, 30, 2) *' and now...*

result = MID(theText, 2, 999) *' no worries...*

result = MID(theText, 0, 2)

result = MID(theText, 2, 0)

result = MID(theText 1, 2)

result = MID(theText 2, 1)

idx = INSTR(strNothing, "123")

idx = INSTR(theText, strNothing)

idx = INSTR(theText, strEmpty) i = LEN(strEmpty)

i = LEN(strNothing) *'...*

Please feel free to edit this example and make it better. As long as it remains clear, and has in it common usage practices.

Chapter 9: Substrings

Section 9.1: Use Left or Left\$ to get the 3 left-most characters in a string

```
Const baseString As String = "Foo Bar"
```

```
Dim leftText As String
```

```
leftText = Left$(baseString, 3)
```

```
'leftText = "Foo"
```

Section 9.2: Use Right or Right\$ to get the 3 right-most characters in a string

```
Const baseString As String = "Foo Bar"
```

```
Dim rightText As String
```

```
rightText = Right$(baseString, 3)
```

```
'rightText = "Bar"
```

Section 9.3: Use Mid or Mid\$ to get specific characters from within a string

```
Const baseString As String = "Foo Bar"
```

'Get the string starting at character 2 and ending at character 6

```
Dim midText As String
```

```
midText = Mid$(baseString, 2, 5)
```

'midText = "oo Ba"

Section 9.4: Use Trim to get a copy of the string without any leading or trailing spaces

'Trim the leading and trailing spaces in a string

```
Const paddedText As String = " Foo Bar "
```

```
Dim trimmedText As String
```

```
trimmedText = Trim$(paddedText)
```

'trimmedText = "Foo Bar"

Chapter 10: Searching within strings for the presence of substrings

Section 10.1: Use InStr to determine if a string contains a substring

```
Const baseString As String = "Foo Bar"
```

```
Dim containsBar As Boolean
```

'Check if baseString contains "bar" (case insensitive)

```
containsBar = InStr(1, baseString, "bar", vbTextCompare) > 0
```

'containsBar = True

'Check if baseString contains bar (case insensitive)

```
containsBar = InStr(1, baseString, "bar", vbBinaryCompare) > 0
```

'containsBar = False

Section 10.2: Use InStrRev to find the position of the last

instance of a substring

```
Const baseString As String = "Foo Bar" Dim containsBar As Boolean
```

'Find the position of the last "B"

```
Dim posX As Long
```

'Note the different number and order of the parameters for InStrRev posX =
InStrRev(baseString, "X", 1, vbBinaryCompare) *'posX = 0*

Section 10.3: Use InStr to find the position of the first instance of a substring

```
Const baseString As String = "Foo Bar"
```

```
Dim containsBar As Boolean
```

```
Dim posB As Long
```

```
posB = InStr(1, baseString, "B", vbBinaryCompare)
```

'posB = 5

Chapter 11: Assigning strings with repeated characters

Section 11.1: Use the String function to assign a string with n repeated characters

```
Dim lineOfHyphens As String
```

'Assign a string with 80 repeated hyphens

```
lineOfHyphens = String$(80, "-")
```

Section 11.2: Use the String and Space functions to assign an n-character string

```
Dim stringOfSpaces As String
```

'Assign a string with 255 repeated spaces using Space\$

```
stringOfSpaces = Space$(255)
```

'Assign a string with 255 repeated spaces using String\$

```
stringOfSpaces = String$(255, " ")
```

Chapter 12: Measuring the length of strings

Section 12.1: Use the Len function to determine the number of characters in a string

```
Const baseString As String = "Hello World"  
Dim charLength As Long  
charLength = Len(baseString)  
'charlength = 11
```

Section 12.2: Use the LenB function to determine the number of bytes in a string

```
Const baseString As String = "Hello World"  
Dim byteLength As Long  
byteLength = LenB(baseString)  
'byteLength = 22
```

Section 12.3: Prefer `If Len(myString) = 0 Then` over `If myString = "" Then`

When checking if a string is zero-length, it is better practice, and more efficient, to inspect the length of the string rather than comparing the string to an empty string.

```
Const myString As String = vbNullString  
'Prefer this method when checking if myString is a zero-length string  
If Len(myString) = 0 Then  
    Debug.Print "myString is zero-length"  
End If  
'Avoid using this method when checking if myString is a zero-length string  
If myString = vbNullString Then  
    Debug.Print "myString is zero-length"  
End If
```

Chapter 13: Converting other types to strings

Section 13.1: Use CStr to convert a numeric type to a string

```
Const zipCode As Long = 10012
Dim zipCodeText As String
'Convert the zipCode number to a string of digit characters
zipCodeText = CStr(zipCode)
'zipCodeText = "10012"
```

Section 13.2: Use Format to convert and format a numeric type as a string

```
Const zipCode As long = 10012
Dim zeroPaddedNumber As String
zeroPaddedZipCode = Format(zipCode, "00000000") 'zeroPaddedNumber = "00010012"
```

Section 13.3: Use StrConv to convert a byte-array of singlebyte characters to a string

```
'Declare an array of bytes, assign single-byte character codes, and convert to a string
Dim singleByteChars(4) As Byte
singleByteChars(0) = 72
singleByteChars(1) = 101
singleByteChars(2) = 108
singleByteChars(3) = 108
singleByteChars(4) = 111
Dim stringFromSingleByteChars As String
stringFromSingleByteChars = StrConv(singleByteChars, vbUnicode)
'stringFromSingleByteChars = "Hello"
```

Section 13.4: Implicitly convert a byte array of multi-bytecharacters to a string

```
'Declare an array of bytes, assign multi-byte character codes, and convert to a string
Dim multiByteChars(9) As Byte
multiByteChars(0) = 87
multiByteChars(1) = 0
multiByteChars(2) = 111
```

```
multiByteChars(3) = 0
multiByteChars(4) = 114
multiByteChars(5) = 0
multiByteChars(6) = 108
multiByteChars(7) = 0
multiByteChars(8) = 100
multiByteChars(9) = 0
```

```
Dim stringFromMultiByteChars As String stringFromMultiByteChars =
multiByteChars 'stringFromMultiByteChars = "World"
```

Chapter 14: Date Time Manipulation

Section 14.1: Calendar

VBA supports 2 calendars : **Gregorian** and **Hijri**

The Calendar property is used to modify or display the current calendar.

The 2 values for the Calendar are:

Value Constant Description

0 vbCalGreg Gregorian calendar (default)

1 vbCalHijri Hijri calendar

Example

```
Sub CalendarExample()
```

```
'Cache the current setting.
```

```
Dim Cached As Integer
```

```
Cached = Calendar
```

```
' Dates in Gregorian Calendar
```

```
Calendar = vbCalGreg
```

```
Dim Sample As Date
```

```
'Create sample date of 2016-07-28
```

```
Sample = DateSerial(2016, 7, 28)
```

```
Debug.Print "Current Calendar : " & Calendar
```

```
Debug.Print "SampleDate = " & Format$(Sample, "yyyy-mm-dd")
```

' Date in Hijri Calendar

Calendar = vbCalHijri

Debug.Print "Current Calendar : " & Calendar

Debug.Print "SampleDate = " & Format\$(Sample, "yyyy-mm-dd")

'Reset VBA to cached value.

Calendar = Cached

End Sub

This Sub prints the following ;

Current Calendar : 0

SampleDate = 2016-07-28 Current Calendar : 1

SampleDate = 1437-10-23

Section 14.2: Base functions

Retrieve System DateTime

VBA supports 3 built-in functions to retrieve the date and/or time from the system's clock.

Function Return Type Return Value

Now Date Returns the current date and time

Date Date Returns the date portion of the current date and time Time Date

Returns the time portion of the current date and time

Sub DateTimeExample()

' Note : EU system with default date format DD/MM/YYYY

Debug.Print Now *' prints 28/07/2016 10:16:01 (output below assumes this date and time)* Debug.Print Date *' prints 28/07/2016*

Debug.Print Time *' prints 10:16:01*

' Apply a custom format to the current date or time

Debug.Print Format\$(Now, "dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn") *' prints 28 July 2016 10:16* Debug.Print Format\$(Date, "yyyy-mm-dd") *' prints 2016-07-28*

Debug.Print Format\$(Time, "hh") & " hour " & _

Format\$(Time, "nn") & " min " & _

Format\$(Time, "ss") & " sec " *' prints 10 hour 16 min 01 sec*

End Sub

Timer Function

The Timer function returns a Single representing the number of seconds elapsed since midnight. The precision is one hundredth of a second.

Sub TimerExample()

Debug.Print Time ' *prints 10:36:31 (time at execution)* Debug.Print Timer ' *prints 38191,13 (seconds since midnight)*

End Sub

Because Now and Time functions are only precise to seconds, Timer offers a convenient way to increase accuracy of time measurement:

Sub GetBenchmark()

Dim StartTime **As** Single

StartTime = Timer ' *Store the current Time*

Dim i **As** Long

Dim temp **As** String

For i = 1 **To** 1000000 ' *See how long it takes Left\$ to execute 1,000,000 times*

temp = Left\$("Text", 2)

Next i

Dim Elapsed **As** Single

Elapsed = Timer - StartTime

Debug.Print "Code completed in " & CInt(Elapsed * 1000) & " ms"

End Sub

IsDate()

IsDate() tests whether an expression is a valid date or not. Returns a Boolean.

Sub IsDateExamples()

Dim anything **As** Variant anything = "September 11, 2001"

Debug.Print IsDate(anything) ' *Prints True*

anything = #9/11/2001#

Debug.Print IsDate(anything) ' *Prints True*

anything = "just a string"

Debug.Print IsDate(anything) ' *Prints False*

anything = vbNull

Debug.Print IsDate(anything) ' *Prints False* **End Sub**

Section 14.3: Extraction functions

These functions take a Variant that can be cast to a **Date** as a parameter and return an **Integer** representing a portion of a date or time. If the parameter can not be cast to a **Date**, it will result in a run-time error 13: Type mismatch.

Function Year()
Month()
Day()

Description Returns the year portion of the date argument. Returns the month portion of the date argument. Returns the day portion of the date argument.

WeekDay() Returns the day of the week of the date argument. Accepts an optional second argument defining the first day of the week

Hour() Returns the hour portion of the date argument.
Minute() Returns the minute portion of the date argument.
Second() Returns the second portion of the date argument.

Returned value Integer (100 to 9999) Integer (1 to 12)
Integer (1 to 31)

Integer (1 to 7)

Integer (0 to 23)
Integer (0 to 59)
Integer (0 to 59)

Examples:

Sub ExtractionExamples()

Dim MyDate **As** Date

MyDate = DateSerial(2016, 7, 28) + TimeSerial(12, 34, 56)

Debug.Print Format\$(MyDate, "yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss") ' prints 2016-07-28
12:34:56

```
Debug.Print Year(MyDate) ' prints 2016 Debug.Print Month(MyDate) '
prints 7 Debug.Print Day(MyDate) ' prints 28 Debug.Print Hour(MyDate) '
prints 12 Debug.Print Minute(MyDate) ' prints 34 Debug.Print
Second(MyDate) ' prints 56
```

```
Debug.Print Weekday(MyDate) ' prints 5 'Varies by locale - i.e. will print 4
in the EU and 5 in the US Debug.Print Weekday(MyDate,
vbUseSystemDayOfWeek)
Debug.Print Weekday(MyDate, vbMonday) ' prints 4 Debug.Print
Weekday(MyDate, vbSunday) ' prints 5
```

End Sub

DatePart() Function

DatePart() is also a function returning a portion of a date, but works differently and allow more possibilities than the functions above. It can for instance return the Quarter of the year or the Week of the year.

Syntax:

DatePart (interval, *date* [, firstdayofweek] [, firstweekofyear])
interval argument can be :

Interval Description "yyyy" Year (100 to 9999)

"y" Day of the year (1 to 366) "m" Month (1 to 12)

"q" Quarter (1 to 4)

"ww" Week (1 to 53)

"w" Day of the week (1 to 7) "d" Day of the month (1 to 31) "h" Hour (0 to 23)

"n" Minute (0 to 59)

"s" Second (0 to 59)

firstdayofweek is optional. it is a constant that specifies the first day of the week. If not specified, vbSunday is assumed.

firstweekofyear is optional. it is a constant that specifies the first week of the year. If not specified, the first week is assumed to be the week in which January 1 occurs.

Examples:

```
Sub DatePartExample()
```

```
Dim MyDate As Date
```

```
MyDate = DateSerial(2016, 7, 28) + TimeSerial(12, 34, 56)
```

```
Debug.Print Format$(MyDate, "yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss") ' prints 2016-07-28
12:34:56
```

```
Debug.Print DatePart("yyyy", MyDate) ' prints 2016 Debug.Print
DatePart("y", MyDate) ' prints 210 Debug.Print DatePart("h", MyDate) '
prints 12 Debug.Print DatePart("Q", MyDate) ' prints 3 Debug.Print
DatePart("w", MyDate) ' prints 5 Debug.Print DatePart("ww", MyDate) '
prints 31
```

End Sub

Section 14.4: Calculation functions

DateDiff()

DateDiff() returns a **Long** representing the number of time intervals between two specified dates.

Syntax

```
DateDiff ( interval, date1, date2 [, firstdayofweek] [, firstweekofyear] )
```

interval can be any of the intervals defined in the **DatePart()** function
date1 and *date2* are the two dates you want to use in the calculation
firstdayofweek and *firstweekofyear* are optional. Refer to **DatePart()** function for explanations

Examples

```
Sub DateDiffExamples()
```

```
' Check to see if 2016 is a leap year.
```

```
Dim NumberOfDays As Long
```

```
NumberOfDays = DateDiff("d", #1/1/2016#, #1/1/2017#)
```

```
If NumberOfDays = 366 Then
```

```
Debug.Print "2016 is a leap year." 'This will output.
```

```
End If
```

```
' Number of seconds in a day
```

```
Dim StartTime As Date
```

```
Dim EndTime As Date
```

```
StartTime = TimeSerial(0, 0, 0)
EndTime = TimeSerial(24, 0, 0)
Debug.Print DateDiff("s", StartTime, EndTime) 'prints 86400
```

End Sub

DateAdd()

DateAdd() returns a **Date** to which a specified date or time interval has been added.

Syntax

DateAdd (interval, number, date)

interval can be any of the intervals defined in the **DatePart()** function
number Numeric expression that is the number of intervals you want to add. It can be positive (to get dates in the future) or negative (to get dates in the past).
date is a **Date** or literal representing date to which the interval is added

Examples :

```
Sub DateAddExamples()
```

```
Dim Sample As Date
```

```
'Create sample date and time of 2016-07-28 12:34:56 Sample =  
DateSerial(2016, 7, 28) + TimeSerial(12, 34, 56)
```

```
' Date 5 months previously (prints 2016-02-28):
```

```
Debug.Print Format$(DateAdd("m", 5, Sample), "yyyy-mm-dd")
```

```
' Date 10 months previously (prints 2015-09-28):
```

```
Debug.Print Format$(DateAdd("m", 10, Sample), "yyyy-mm-dd")
```

```
' Date in 8 months (prints 2017-03-28):
```

```
Debug.Print Format$(DateAdd("m", 8, Sample), "yyyy-mm-dd")
```

```
' Date/Time 18 hours previously (prints 2016-07-27 18:34:56): Debug.Print  
Format$(DateAdd("h", 18, Sample), "yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss")
```

```
' Date/Time in 36 hours (prints 2016-07-30 00:34:56):
```

```
Debug.Print Format$(DateAdd("h", 36, Sample), "yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss")
```

```
End Sub
```

Section 14.5: Conversion and Creation

CDate()

CDate() converts something from any datatype to a **Date** datatype

Sub CDateExamples()

Dim sample **As** **Date**

' Converts a String representing a date and time to a Date

sample = **CDate**("September 11, 2001 12:34")

Debug.Print **Format**\$(sample, "yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss") *' prints 2001-09-11 12:34:00*

' Converts a String containing a date to a Date

sample = **CDate**("September 11, 2001")

Debug.Print **Format**\$(sample, "yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss") *' prints 2001-09-11 00:00:00*

' Converts a String containing a time to a Date

sample = **CDate**("12:34:56")

Debug.Print **Hour**(sample) *' prints 12*

Debug.Print **Minute**(sample) *' prints 34*

Debug.Print **Second**(sample) *' prints 56*

' Find the 10000th day from the epoch date of 1899-12-31

sample = **CDate**(10000)

Debug.Print **Format**\$(sample, "yyyy-mm-dd") *' prints 1927-05-18*

End Sub

Note that VBA also has a loosely typed **CVDate()** that functions in the same way as the **CDate()** function other than returning a date typed Variant instead of a strongly typed **Date**. The **CDate()** version should be preferred when passing to a **Date** parameter or assigning to a **Date** variable, and the **CVDate()** version should be preferred when passing to a Variant parameter or assigning to a Variant variable. This avoids implicit type casting.

DateSerial()

DateSerial() function is used to create a date. It returns a **Date** for a specified year, month, and day.

Syntax:

DateSerial (year, month, day)

With year, month and day arguments being valid Integers (Year from 100 to 9999, Month from 1 to 12, Day from 1 to 31).

Examples

Sub DateSerialExamples()

' Build a specific date

Dim sample **As** Date

sample = DateSerial(2001, 9, 11)

Debug.Print Format\$(sample, "yyyy-mm-dd") ' prints 2001-09-11

' Find the first day of the month for a date.

sample = DateSerial(Year(sample), Month(sample), 1)

Debug.Print Format\$(sample, "yyyy-mm-dd") ' prints 2001-09-11

' Find the last day of the previous month.

sample = DateSerial(Year(sample), Month(sample), 1) - 1

Debug.Print Format\$(sample, "yyyy-mm-dd") ' prints 2001-09-11

End Sub

Note that DateSerial() will accept "invalid" dates and calculate a valid date from it. This can be used creatively for good:

Positive Example

Sub GoodDateSerialExample()

'Calculate 45 days from today

Dim today **As** Date

today = DateSerial (2001, 9, 11)

Dim futureDate **As** Date

futureDate = DateSerial(Year(today), Month(today), Day(today) + 45)

Debug.Print Format\$(futureDate, "yyyy-mm-dd") 'prints 2009-10-26

End Sub

However, it is more likely to cause grief when attempting to create a date from unvalidated user input:

Negative Example

Sub BadDateSerialExample()

'Allow user to enter unvalidate date information

```
Dim myYear As Long  
myYear = InputBox("Enter Year")
```

'Assume user enters 2009

```
Dim myMonth As Long  
myMonth = InputBox("Enter Month")
```

'Assume user enters 2

```
Dim myDay As Long  
myDay = InputBox("Enter Day")
```

'Assume user enters 31

```
Debug.Print Format$(DateSerial(myYear, myMonth, myDay), "yyyy-mm-dd") 'prints 2009-03-03  
End Sub
```

Chapter 15: Data Types and Limits

Section 15.1: Variant

```
Dim Value As Variant 'Explicit
```

```
Dim Value 'Implicit
```

A Variant is a COM data type that is used for storing and exchanging values of arbitrary types, and any other type in VBA can be assigned to a Variant. Variables declared without an explicit type specified by **As** [Type] default to Variant.

Variants are stored in memory as a **VARIANT structure** that consists of a byte type descriptor (**VARTYPE**) followed by 6 reserved bytes then an 8 byte data area. For numeric types (including Date and Boolean), the underlying value is stored in the Variant itself. For all other types, the data area contains a pointer to the underlying value.

VARTYPE		Reserved						Data area			
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11

The underlying type of a Variant can be determined with either the VarType() function which returns the numeric value stored in the type descriptor, or the

TypeName() function which returns the string representation:

Dim Example **As** Variant

Example = 42

Debug.Print VarType(Example) Debug.Print TypeName(Example) Example
= "Some text"

Debug.Print VarType(Example) Debug.Print TypeName(Example)

'Prints 2 (VT_I2) 'Prints "Integer"

'Prints 8 (VT_BSTR) 'Prints "String"

Because Variants can store values of any type, assignments from literals without type hints will be implicitly cast to a Variant of the appropriate type according to the table below. Literals with type hints will be cast to a Variant of the hinted type.

Value

String values

Non-floating point numbers in Integer range Non-floating point numbers in
Long range

Resulting type String

Integer

Long

Non-floating point numbers outside of Long range Double All floating point
numbers Double

Note: Unless there is a specific reason to use a Variant (i.e. an iterator in a For Each loop or an API requirement), the type should generally be avoided for routine tasks for the following reasons:

They are not type safe, increasing the possibility of runtime errors. For example, a Variant holding an Integer value will silently change itself into a Long instead of overflowing.

They introduce processing overhead by requiring at least one additional pointer dereference. The memory requirement for a Variant is always **at least** 8 bytes higher than needed to store the underlying type.

The casting function to convert to a Variant is CVar().

Section 15.2: Boolean

Dim Value **As** Boolean

A Boolean is used to store values that can be represented as either True or False. Internally, the data type is stored as a 16 bit value with 0 representing False and any other value representing True.

It should be noted that when a Boolean is cast to a numeric type, all of the bits are set to 1. This results in an internal representation of -1 for signed types and the maximum value for an unsigned type (Byte).

Dim Example **As** Boolean

Example = **True**

Debug.Print **CInt**(Example) *'Prints -1*

Debug.Print **CBool**(42) *'Prints True*

Debug.Print **CByte**(**True**) *'Prints 255*

The casting function to convert to a Boolean is **CBool**(). Even though it is represented internally as a 16 bit number, casting to a Boolean from values outside of that range is safe from overflow, although it sets all 16 bits to 1:

Dim Example **As** Boolean

Example = **CBool**(2 ^ 17)

Debug.Print **CInt**(Example) *'Prints -1* Debug.Print **CByte**(Example) *'Prints 255*

Section 15.3: String

A String represents a sequence of characters, and comes in two flavors:

Variable length

Dim Value **As** String

A variable length String allows appending and truncation and is stored in memory as a COM **BSTR**. This consists of a 4 byte unsigned integer that stores the length of the String in bytes followed by the string data itself as wide characters (2 bytes per character) and terminated with 2 null bytes.

Thus, the maximum string length that can be handled by VBA is 2,147,483,647 characters.

The internal pointer to the structure (retrievable by the StrPtr() function) points to the memory location of the *data*, not the length prefix. This means that a VBA String can be passed directly API functions that require a pointer to a character array.

Because the length can change, VBA reallocates memory for a String *every time the variable is assigned to*, which can impose performance penalties for procedures that alter them repeatedly.

Fixed length

Dim Value **As String** * 1024 *'Declares a fixed length string of 1024 characters.*

Fixed length strings are allocated 2 bytes for each character and are stored in memory as a simple byte array. Once allocated, the length of the String is immutable. They are **not** null terminated in memory, so a string that fills the memory allocated with non-null characters is unsuitable for passing to API functions expecting a null terminated string.

Fixed length strings carry over a legacy 16 bit index limitation, so can only be up to 65,535 characters in length. Attempting to assign a value longer than the available memory space will not result in a runtime error - instead the resulting value will simply be truncated:

```
Dim Foobar As String * 5
Foobar = "Foo" & "bar"
Debug.Print Foobar 'Prints "Fooba"
```

The casting function to convert to a String of either type is CStr().

Section 15.4: Byte

Dim Value **As Byte**

A Byte is an unsigned 8 bit data type. It can represent integer numbers between 0 and 255 and attempting to store a value outside of that range will

result in [runtime error 6: Overflow](#). Byte is the only intrinsic unsigned type available in VBA.

The casting function to convert to a Byte is `CByte()`. For casts from floating point types, the result is rounded to the nearest integer value with .5 rounding up.

Byte Arrays and Strings

Strings and byte arrays can be substituted for one another through simple assignment (no conversion functions necessary).

For example:

```
Sub ByteToStringAndBack()  
Dim str As String  
str = "Hello, World!"  
Dim byt() As Byte  
byt = str  
Debug.Print byt(0) ' 72  
Dim str2 As String  
str2 = byt  
Debug.Print str2 ' Hello, World!  
End Sub
```

In order to be able to encode [Unicode](#) characters, each character in the string takes up two bytes in the array, with the least significant byte first. For example:

```
Sub UnicodeExample()  
Dim str As String  
str = ChrW(&H2123) & "." ' Versicle character and a dot  
Dim byt() As Byte  
byt = str  
Debug.Print byt(0), byt(1), byt(2), byt(3) ' Prints: 35,33,46,0  
End Sub
```

Section 15.5: Currency

```
Dim Value As Currency
```

A Currency is a signed 64 bit floating point data type similar to a Double, but scaled by 10,000 to give greater precision to the 4 digits to the right of the

decimal point. A Currency variable can store values from -922,337,203,685,477.5808 to 922,337,203,685,477.5807, giving it the largest capacity of any intrinsic type in a 32 bit application. As the name of the data type implies, it is considered best practice to use this data type when representing monetary calculations as the scaling helps to avoid rounding errors.

The casting function to convert to a Currency is CCur().

Section 15.6: Decimal

Dim Value As Variant

Value = CDec(1.234)

'Set Value to the smallest possible Decimal value

[illegible]

The **Decimal** data-type is *only* available as a sub-type of Variant, so you must declare any variable that needs to contain a **Decimal** as a Variant and *then* assign a **Decimal** value using the **CDec** function. The keyword **Decimal** is a reserved word (which suggests that VBA was eventually going to add first-class support for the type), so **Decimal** cannot be used as a variable or procedure name.

The **Decimal** type requires 14 bytes of memory (in addition to the bytes required by the parent Variant) and can store numbers with up to 28 decimal places. For numbers without any decimal places, the range of allowed values is -79,228,162,514,264,337,593,543,950,335 to +79,228,162,514,264,337,593,543,950,335 inclusive. For numbers with the maximum 28 decimal places, the range of allowed values is -7.9228162514264337593543950335 to +7.9228162514264337593543950335 inclusive.

Section 15.7: Integer

Dim Value As Integer

An Integer is a signed 16 bit data type. It can store integer numbers in the range of -32,768 to 32,767 and attempting to store a value outside of that

range will result in runtime error 6: Overflow.

Integers are stored in memory as **little-endian** values with negatives represented as a **two's complement**.

Note that in general, it is better practice to use a Long rather than an Integer unless the smaller type is a member of a Type or is required (either by an API calling convention or some other reason) to be 2 bytes. In most cases VBA treats Integers as 32 bit internally, so there is usually no advantage to using the smaller type. Additionally, there is a performance penalty incurred every time an Integer type is used as it is silently cast as a Long.

The casting function to convert to an Integer is **CInt()**. For casts from floating point types, the result is rounded to the nearest integer value with .5 rounding up.

Section 15.8: Long

Dim Value **As** Long

A Long is a signed 32 bit data type. It can store integer numbers in the range of -2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647 and attempting to store a value outside of that range will result in runtime error 6: Overflow.

Longs are stored in memory as **little-endian** values with negatives represented as a **two's complement**.

Note that since a Long matches the width of a pointer in a 32 bit operating system, Longs are commonly used for storing and passing pointers to and from API functions.

The casting function to convert to a Long is **CLng()**. For casts from floating point types, the result is rounded to the nearest integer value with .5 rounding up.

Section 15.9: Single

Dim Value **As** Single

A Single is a signed 32 bit floating point data type. It is stored internally using a **little-endian IEEE 754** memory layout. As such, there is not a fixed range of values that can be represented by the data type - what is limited is

the precision of value stored. A Single can store a value *integer* values in the range of -16,777,216 to 16,777,216 without a loss of precision. The precision of floating point numbers depends on the exponent.

A Single will overflow if assigned a value greater than roughly 2128. It will not overflow with negative exponents, although the usable precision will be questionable before the upper limit is reached.

As with all floating point numbers, care should be taken when making equality comparisons. Best practice is to include a delta value appropriate to the required precision.

The casting function to convert to a Single is **CSng()**.

Section 15.10: Double

Dim Value **As** Double

A Double is a signed 64 bit floating point data type. Like the Single, it is stored internally using a **little-endian IEEE 754** memory layout and the same precautions regarding precision should be taken. A Double can store *integer* values in the range of -9,007,199,254,740,992 to 9,007,199,254,740,992 without a loss of precision. The precision of floating point numbers depends on the exponent.

A Double will overflow if assigned a value greater than roughly 21024. It will not overflow with negative exponents, although the usable precision will be questionable before the upper limit is reached.

The casting function to convert to a Double is **Cdbl()**.

Section 15.11: Date

Dim Value **As** Date

A Date type is represented internally as a signed 64 bit floating point data type with the value to the left of the decimal representing the number of days from the epoch date of December 30th, 1899 (although see the note below).

The value to the right of the decimal represents the time as a fractional day.

Thus, an integer Date would have a time component of 12:00:00AM and x.5

would have a time component of 12:00:00PM.

Valid values for Dates are between January 1st 100 and December 31st 9999. Since a Double has a larger range, it is possible to overflow a Date by assigning values outside of that range.

As such, it can be used interchangeably with a Double for Date calculations:

Dim MyDate **As** Double

MyDate = 0 *'Epoch date*. Debug.Print Format\$(MyDate, "yyyy-mm-dd")

'Prints 1899-12-30. MyDate = MyDate + 365

Debug.Print Format\$(MyDate, "yyyy-mm-dd") *'Prints 1900-12-30*.

The casting function to convert to a Date is **CDate()**, which accepts any numeric type string date/time representation. It is important to note that string representations of dates will be converted based on the current locale setting in use, so direct casts should be avoided if the code is meant to be portable.

Section 15.12: LongLong

Dim Value **As** LongLong

A LongLong is a signed 64 bit data type and is only available in 64 bit applications. It is **not** available in 32 bit applications running on 64 bit operating systems. It can store integer values in the range of -9,223,372,036,854,775,808 to 9,223,372,036,854,775,807 and attempting to store a value outside of that range will result in runtime error 6: Overflow.

LongLongs are stored in memory as **little-endian** values with negatives represented as a **two's complement**.

The LongLong data type was introduced as part of VBA's 64 bit operating system support. In 64 bit applications, this value can be used to store and pass pointers to 64 bit APIs.

The casting function to convert to a LongLong is **CLngLng()**. For casts from floating point types, the result is rounded to the nearest integer value with .5 rounding up.

Section 15.13: LongPtr

Dim Value **As** LongPtr

The LongPtr was introduced into VBA in order to support 64 bit platforms. On a 32 bit system, it is treated as a Long and on 64 bit systems it is treated as a LongLong.

It's primary use is in providing a portable way to store and pass pointers on both architectures (See Changing code behavior at compile time).

Although it is treated by the operating system as a memory address when used in API calls, it should be noted that VBA treats it like signed type (and therefore subject to unsigned to signed overflow). For this reason, any pointer arithmetic performed using LongPtrs should not use > or < comparisons. This "quirk" also makes it possible that adding simple offsets pointing to valid addresses in memory can cause overflow errors, so caution should be taken when working with pointers in VBA.

The casting function to convert to a LongPtr is CLngPtr(). For casts from floating point types, the result is rounded to the nearest integer value with .5 rounding up (although since it is usually a memory address, using it as an assignment target for a floating point calculation is dangerous at best).

Chapter 16: Naming Conventions

Section 16.1: Variable Names

Variables hold data. Name them after what they're used for, **not after their data type** or scope, using a **noun**. If you feel compelled to *number* your variables (e.g. thing1, thing2, thing3), then consider using an appropriate data structure instead (e.g. an array, a Collection, or a Dictionary).

Names of variables that represent an iterable *set* of values - e.g. an array, a Collection, a Dictionary, or a Range of cells, should be plural.

Some common VBA naming conventions go thus:

For procedure-level Variables:

camelCase

Public Sub ExampleNaming(**ByVal** inputValue **As** Long, **ByRef** inputValue **As** Long)

Dim procedureVariable **As** Long

Dim someOtherVariable **As** String

End Sub

For module-level Variables:

PascalCase

Public GlobalVariable **As** Long

Private ModuleVariable **As** String

For Constants:

SHOUTY_SNAKE_CASE is commonly used to differentiate constants from variables:

Public Const GLOBAL_CONSTANT **As** String = "Project Version
#1.000.000.001"

Private Const MODULE_CONSTANT **As** String = "Something relevant to
this Module"

Public Sub SomeProcedure()

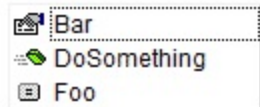
Const PROCEDURE_CONSTANT **As** Long = 10

End Sub

However PascalCase names make cleaner-looking code and are just as good, given IntelliSense uses different icons for variables and constants:

```
Option Explicit  
Public Const Foo As String = "foo"  
Public Bar As String
```

```
Sub DoSomething()  
    Module1.  
End Sub
```



Hungarian Notation

Name them after what they're used for, **not after their data type** or scope.

"Hungarian Notation makes it easier to see what the type of a variable is"

If you write your code such as procedures adhere to the *Single Responsibility Principle* (as it should), you should never be looking at a screenful of variable declarations at the top of any procedure; declare variables as close as possible to their first usage, and their data type will always be in plain sight if you declare them with an explicit type. The VBE's Ctrl + i shortcut can be used to display a variable's type in a tooltip, too.

What a variable is used for is much more useful information than its data type, *especially* in a language such as VBA which happily and implicitly converts a type into another as needed.

Consider iFile and strFile in this example:

```
Function bReadFile(ByVal strFile As String, ByRef strData As String) As  
Boolean Dim bRetVal As Boolean  
Dim iFile As Integer
```

```
On Error GoTo CleanFail
```

```
iFile = FreeFile  
Open strFile For Input As #iFile  
Input #iFile, strData
```

```
bRetVal = True
```

```
CleanExit:  
Close #iFile  
bReadFile = bRetVal  
Exit Function
```

```
CleanFail:  
bRetVal = False  
Resume CleanExit
```

```
End Function
```

Compare to:

```
Function CanReadFile(ByVal path As String, ByRef outContent As String)  
As Boolean On Error GoTo CleanFail
```

```
Dim handle As Integer  
handle = FreeFile  
Open path For Input As #handle Input #handle, outContent
```

```
Dim result As Boolean result = True
```

```
CleanExit:  
Close #handle  
CanReadFile = result Exit Function
```

```
CleanFail:
```

```
result = False
Resume CleanExit
```

End Function

strData is passed **ByRef** in the top example, but beside the fact that we're lucky enough to see that it's *explicitly* passed as such, there's no indication that strData is actually *returned* by the function.

The bottom example names it outContent; this **out** prefix is what Hungarian Notation was invented for: to help clarify *what a variable is used for*, in this case to clearly identify it as an "out" parameter.

This is useful, because IntelliSense by itself doesn't display **ByRef**, even when the parameter is *explicitly* passed by reference:

```
Public Sub DoSomething()  
    if CanReadFile(path, |  
End Sub CanReadFile(ByVal path As String, outContent As String) As Boolean
```

Which leads to...

Hungarian Done Right

Hungarian Notation originally *didn't* have anything to do with variable types.

In fact, Hungarian Notation *done right* is actually useful. Consider this small example (**ByVal** and **As Integer** removed for brevity):

```
Public Sub Copy(iX1, iY1, iX2, iY2)  
End Sub
```

Compare to:

```
Public Sub Copy(srcColumn, srcRow, dstColumn, dstRow)  
End Sub
```

src and dst are *Hungarian Notation* prefixes here, and they convey *useful* information that cannot otherwise already be inferred from the parameter names or IntelliSense showing us the declared type.

Of course there's a better way to convey it all, using proper *abstraction* and real words that can be pronounced out loud and make sense - as a contrived example:

```
Type Coordinate  
RowIndex As Long  
ColumnIndex As Long
```

```
End Type
```

```
Sub Copy(source As Coordinate, destination As Coordinate)
```

End Sub

Section 16.2: Procedure Names

Procedures *do something*. Name them after what they're doing, using a **verb**. If accurately naming a procedure is not possible, likely the procedure is *doing too many things* and needs to be broken down into smaller, more specialized procedures.

Some common VBA naming conventions go thus:

For all Procedures:

PascalCase

Public Sub DoThing()

End Sub

Private Function ReturnSomeValue() **As** [DataType]

End Function

For event handler procedures:

ObjectName_EventName

Public Sub Workbook_Open()

End Sub

Public Sub Button1_Click()

End Sub

Event handlers are usually automatically named by the VBE; renaming them without renaming the object and/or the handled event will break the code - the code will run and compile, but the handler procedure will be orphaned and will never be executed.

Boolean Members

Consider a Boolean-returning function:

Function bReadFile(**ByVal** strFile **As** String, **ByRef** strData **As** String) **As** Boolean **End Function**

Compare to:

Function CanReadFile(**ByVal** path **As** String, **ByRef** outContent **As** String) **As** Boolean **End Function**

The Can prefix *does* serve the same purpose as the b prefix: it identifies the function's return value as a **Boolean**. But Can reads better than b:

If CanReadFile(path, content) **Then**

Compared to:

If bReadFile(strFile, strData) **Then**

Consider using prefixes such as Can, Is or Has in front of Boolean-returning members (functions and properties), but only when it adds value. This conforms with the [current Microsoft naming guidelines](#).

Chapter 17: Data Structures

[TODO: This topic should be an example of all the basic CS 101 data structures along with some explanation as an overview of how data structures can be implemented in VBA. This would be a good opportunity to tie in and reinforce concepts introduced in Class-related topics in VBA documentation.]

Section 17.1: Linked List

This linked list example implements [Set abstract data type](#) operations.

SinglyLinkedList class

Option Explicit

Private Value **As** Variant

Private NextNode **As** SinglyLinkedListNode *""Next" is a keyword in VBA and therefore is not a valid variable name*

LinkedList class

Option Explicit

Private head **As** SinglyLinkedListNode

'Set type operations

Public Sub Add(value **As** Variant)

Dim node **As** SinglyLinkedListNode

Set node = **New** SinglyLinkedListNode

node.value = value

Set node.nextNode = head

Set head = node

End Sub

```
Public Sub Remove(value As Variant)
Dim node As SinglyLinkedListNode
Dim prev As SinglyLinkedListNode
```

```
Set node = head
```

```
While Not node Is Nothing
```

```
If node.value = value Then
```

```
'remove node
```

```
If node Is head Then
```

```
Set head = node.nextNode
```

```
Else
```

```
Set prev.nextNode = node.nextNode
```

```
End If
```

```
Exit Sub
```

```
End If
```

```
Set prev = node
```

```
Set node = node.nextNode
```

```
Wend
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Public Function Exists(value As Variant) As Boolean Dim node As SinglyLinkedListNode
```

```
Set node = head
```

```
While Not node Is Nothing
```

```
If node.value = value Then Exists = True
```

```
Exit Function
```

```
End If
```

```
Set node = node.nextNode Wend
```

```
End Function
```

```
Public Function Count() As Long Dim node As SinglyLinkedListNode
```

```
Set node = head
```

```
While Not node Is Nothing Count = Count + 1
```

```
Set node = node.nextNode
```

Wend
End Function

Section 17.2: Binary Tree

This is an example of an unbalanced [binary search tree](#). A binary tree is structured conceptually as a hierarchy of nodes descending downward from a common root, where each node has two children: left and right. For example, suppose the numbers 7, 5, 9, 3, 11, 6, 12, 14 and 15 were inserted into a BinaryTree. The structure would be as below. Note that this binary tree is not [balanced](#), which can be a desirable characteristic for guaranteeing the performance of lookups - see [AVL trees](#) for an example of a self-balancing binary search tree.

```
7
/\
5 9
/\ \
```

```
3 6 11 \ 12 \ 14 \ 15
```

BinaryTreeNode class

Option Explicit

Public left **As** BinaryTreeNode **Public** right **As** BinaryTreeNode **Public** key

As Variant

Public value **As** Variant

BinaryTree class [TODO]

Chapter 18: Arrays

Section 18.1: Multidimensional Arrays

Multidimensional Arrays

As the name indicates, multi dimensional arrays are arrays that contain more than one dimension, usually two or three but it can have up to 32 dimensions. A multi array works like a matrix with various levels, take in example a comparison between one, two, and three Dimensions.

One Dimension is your typical array, it looks like a list of elements.

Dim 1D(3) **as** Variant

1D - Visually

(0)

(1)

(2)

Two Dimensions would look like a Sudoku Grid or an Excel sheet, when initializing the array you would define how many rows and columns the array would have.

Dim 2D(3,3) **as** Variant

'this would result in a 3x3 grid'

2D - Visually

(0,0) (0,1) (0,2)

(1,0) (1,1) (1,2)

(2,0) (2,1) (2,2)

Three Dimensions would start to look like Rubik's Cube, when initializing the array you would define rows and columns and layers/depths the array would have.

Dim 3D(3,3,2) **as** Variant

'this would result in a 3x3x3 grid'

3D - Visually

1st layer 2nd layer 3rd layer front middle back

(0,0,0) (0,0,1) (0,0,2) | (1,0,0) (1,0,1) (1,0,2) | (2,0,0) (2,0,1) (2,0,2) (0,1,0)
(0,1,1) (0,1,2) | (1,1,0) (1,1,1) (1,1,2) | (2,1,0) (2,1,1) (2,1,2) (0,2,0) (0,2,1)
(0,2,2) | (1,2,0) (1,2,1) (1,2,2) | (2,2,0) (2,2,1) (2,2,2)

Further dimensions could be thought as the multiplication of the 3D, so a 4D(1,3,3,3) would be two side-by-side 3D arrays.

Two-Dimension Array

Creating

The example below will be a compilation of a list of employees, each employee will have a set of information on the list (First Name, Surname,

Address, Email, Phone ...), the example will essentially be storing on the array (employee,information) being the (0,0) is the first employee's first name.

Dim Bosses **As** Variant

'set bosses as Variant, so we can input any data type we want

Bosses = [{ "Jonh", "Snow", "President"; "Ygritte", "Wild", "Vice-President" }]

'initialise a 2D array directly by filling it with information, the result will be a array(1,2) size 2x3 = 6 elements

Dim Employees **As** Variant

'initialize your Employees array as variant

'initialize and ReDim the Employee array so it is a dynamic array instead of a static one, hence treated differently by the VBA Compiler

ReDim Employees(100, 5)

'declaring an 2D array that can store 100 employees with 6 elements of information each, but starts empty

'the array size is 101 x 6 and contains 606 elements

For employee = 0 **To** UBound(Employees, 1)

'for each employee/row in the array, UBound for 2D arrays, which will get the last element on the array

'needs two parameters 1st the array you which to check and 2nd the dimension, in this case 1 = employee and 2 = information

For information_e = 0 **To** UBound(Employees, 2)

'for each information element/column in the array

Employees(employee, information_e) = InformationNeeded '

InformationNeeded would be the data to fill the array

'iterating the full array will allow for direct attribution of information into the element coordinates

Next

Next

Resizing

Resizing or **ReDim** Preserve a Multi-Array like the norm for a One-

Dimension array would get an error, instead the information needs to be transferred into a Temporary array with the same size as the original plus the number of row/columns to add. In the example below we'll see how to initialize a Temp Array, transfer the information over from the original array, fill the remaining empty elements, and replace the temp array by the original array.

Dim TempEmp **As** Variant

'initialise your temp array as variant

ReDim TempEmp(UBound(Employees, 1) + 1, UBound(Employees, 2))

'ReDim/Resize Temp array as a 2D array with size UBound(Employees)+1 = (last element in Employees 1st dimension) + 1,

'the 2nd dimension remains the same as the original array. we effectively add 1 row in the Employee array

'transfer

For emp = LBound(Employees, 1) **To** UBound(Employees, 1)

For info = LBound(Employees, 2) **To** UBound(Employees, 2)

'to transfer Employees into TempEmp we iterate both arrays and fill TempEmp with the corresponding element value in Employees

TempEmp(emp, info) = Employees(emp, info)

Next **Next**

'fill remaining

'after the transfers the Temp array still has unused elements at the end, being that it was increased 'to fill the remaining elements iterate from the last "row" with values to the last row in the array 'in this case the last row in Temp will be the size of the Employees array rows + 1, as the last row of Employees array is already filled in the TempArray

For emp = UBound(Employees, 1) + 1 **To** UBound(TempEmp, 1) **For** info = LBound(TempEmp, 2) **To** UBound(TempEmp, 2)

TempEmp(emp, info) = InformationNeeded & "NewRow"

Next **Next**

'erase Employees, attribute Temp array to Employees and erase Temp array

```
Erase Employees
Employees = TempEmp
Erase TempEmp
```

Changing Element Values

To change/alter the values in a certain element can be done by simply calling the coordinate to change and giving it a new value: Employees(0, 0) = "NewValue"

Alternatively iterate through the coordinates use conditions to match values corresponding to the parameters needed:

```
For emp = 0 To UBound(Employees)
If Employees(emp, 0) = "Gloria" And Employees(emp, 1) = "Stephan" Then
'if value found
```

```
Employees(emp, 1) = "Married, Last Name Change"
Exit For
'don't iterate through a full array unless necessary
```

```
End If
```

```
Next
```

Reading

Accessing the elements in the array can be done with a Nested Loop (iterating every element), Loop and Coordinate (iterate Rows and accessing columns directly), or accessing directly with both coordinates.

'nested loop, will iterate through all elements

```
For emp = LBound(Employees, 1) To UBound(Employees, 1)
```

```
For info = LBound(Employees, 2) To UBound(Employees, 2) Debug.Print
Employees(emp, info)
```

```
Next
```

```
Next
```

'loop and coordinate, iteration through all rows and in each row accessing all columns directly

```
For emp = LBound(Employees, 1) To UBound(Employees, 1)
Debug.Print Employees(emp, 0)
```

```
Debug.Print Employees(emp, 1)
Debug.Print Employees(emp, 2)
Debug.Print Employees(emp, 3)
Debug.Print Employees(emp, 4)
Debug.Print Employees(emp, 5)
```

Next

'directly accessing element with coordinates

```
Debug.Print Employees(5, 5)
```

Remember, it's always handy to keep an array map when using Multidimensional arrays, they can easily become confusion.

Three-Dimension Array

For the 3D array, we'll use the same premise as the 2D array, with the addition of not only storing the Employee and Information but as well Building they work in.

The 3D array will have the Employees (can be thought of as Rows), the Information (Columns), and Building that can be thought of as different sheets on an excel document, they have the same size between them, but every sheets has a different set of information in its cells/elements. The 3D array will contain ***n*** number of 2D arrays.

Creating

A 3D array needs 3 coordinates to be initialized **Dim** 3DArray(2,5,5) **As** Variant the first coordinate on the array will be the number of Building/Sheets (different sets of rows and columns), second coordinate will define Rows and third Columns. The **Dim** above will result in a 3D array with 108 elements (3*6*6), effectively having 3 different sets of 2D arrays.

Dim ThreeDArray **As** Variant

'initialise your ThreeDArray array as variant

ReDim ThreeDArray(1, 50, 5)

'declaring an 3D array that can store two sets of 51 employees with 6 elements of information each, but starts empty

'the array size is 2 x 51 x 6 and contains 612 elements

For building = 0 **To** UBound(ThreeDArray, 1)

'for each building/set in the array

For employee = 0 **To** UBound(ThreeDArray, 2) *'for each employee/row in the array*

For information_e = 0 **To** UBound(ThreeDArray, 3) *'for each information element/column in the array*

ThreeDArray(building, employee, information_e) = InformationNeeded '
InformationNeeded would be the data to fill the array

'iterating the full array will allow for direct attribution of information into the element coordinates

Next

Next

Next

Resizing

Resizing a 3D array is similar to resizing a 2D, first create a Temporary array with the same size of the original adding one in the coordinate of the parameter to increase, the first coordinate will increase the number of sets in the array, the second and third coordinates will increase the number of Rows or Columns in each set.

The example below increases the number of Rows in each set by one, and fills those recently added elements with new information.

Dim TempEmp **As** Variant

'initialise your temp array as variant

ReDim TempEmp(UBound(ThreeDArray, 1), UBound(ThreeDArray, 2) + 1, UBound(ThreeDArray, 3))

'ReDim/Resize Temp array as a 3D array with size UBound(ThreeDArray)+1 = (last element in Employees 2nd dimension) + 1, 'the other dimension remains the same as the original array. we effectively add 1 row in the for each set of the 3D array

'transfer

```
For building = LBound(ThreeDArray, 1) To UBound(ThreeDArray, 1)
For emp = LBound(ThreeDArray, 2) To UBound(ThreeDArray, 2)
For info = LBound(ThreeDArray, 3) To UBound(ThreeDArray, 3)
```

'to transfer ThreeDArray into TempEmp by iterating all sets in the 3D array and fill TempEmp with the corresponding element value in each set of each row

```
TempEmp(building, emp, info) = ThreeDArray(building, emp, info)
```

Next Next
Next

'fill remaining

'to fill the remaining elements we need to iterate from the last "row" with values to the last row in the array in each set, remember that the first empty element is the original array Ubound() plus 1

```
For building = LBound(TempEmp, 1) To UBound(TempEmp, 1)
```

```
For emp = UBound(ThreeDArray, 2) + 1 To UBound(TempEmp, 2)
```

```
For info = LBound(TempEmp, 3) To UBound(TempEmp, 3)
```

```
TempEmp(building, emp, info) = InformationNeeded & "NewRow"
```

Next Next
Next

'erase Employees, attribute Temp array to Employees and erase Temp array

```
Erase ThreeDArray
```

```
ThreeDArray = TempEmp
```

```
Erase TempEmp
```

Changing Element Values and Reading

Reading and changing the elements on the 3D array can be done similarly to the way we do the 2D array, just adjust for the extra level in the loops and coordinates.

Do

' using Do ... While for early exit

```
For building = 0 To UBound(ThreeDArray, 1)
```

```
For emp = 0 To UBound(ThreeDArray, 2)
```

If ThreeDArray(building, emp, 0) = "Gloria" **And** ThreeDArray(building, emp, 1) = "Stephan" **Then**

'if value found

ThreeDArray(building, emp, 1) = "Married, Last Name Change" **Exit Do**

'don't iterate through all the array unless necessary

End If

Next

Next

Loop While False

'nested loop, will iterate through all elements

For building = LBound(ThreeDArray, 1) **To** UBound(ThreeDArray, 1) **For**

emp = LBound(ThreeDArray, 2) **To** UBound(ThreeDArray, 2) **For** info =

LBound(ThreeDArray, 3) **To** UBound(ThreeDArray, 3) Debug.Print

ThreeDArray(building, emp, info) **Next**

Next Next

'loop and coordinate, will iterate through all set of rows and ask for the row plus the value we choose for the columns

For building = LBound(ThreeDArray, 1) **To** UBound(ThreeDArray, 1)

For emp = LBound(ThreeDArray, 2) **To** UBound(ThreeDArray, 2)

Debug.Print ThreeDArray(building, emp, 0)

Debug.Print ThreeDArray(building, emp, 1)

Debug.Print ThreeDArray(building, emp, 2)

Debug.Print ThreeDArray(building, emp, 3)

Debug.Print ThreeDArray(building, emp, 4)

Debug.Print ThreeDArray(building, emp, 5)

Next

Next

'directly accessing element with coordinates Debug.Print Employees(0, 5, 5)

Section 18.2: Dynamic Arrays (Array Resizing and Dynamic Handling)

Dynamic Arrays

Adding and reducing variables on an array dynamically is a huge advantage for when the information you are treating does not have a set number of variables.

Adding Values Dynamically

You can simply resize the Array with the **ReDim** Statement, this will resize the array but to if you wish to retain the information already stored in the array you'll need the **Preserve**.

In the example below we create an array and increase it by one more variable in each iteration while preserving the values already in the array.

Dim Dynamic_array **As** Variant

' first we set Dynamic_array as variant

For n = 1 **To** 100

If IsEmpty(Dynamic_array) **Then**

' isempty() will check if we need to add the first value to the array or subsequent ones

ReDim Dynamic_array(0)

' ReDim Dynamic_array(0) will resize the array to one variable only

Dynamic_array(0) = n

Else

ReDim Preserve Dynamic_array(0 **To** UBound(Dynamic_array) + 1)

' in the line above we resize the array from variable 0 to the UBound() = last variable, plus

one effectively increasing the size of the array by one

Dynamic_array(UBound(Dynamic_array)) = n

' attribute a value to the last variable of Dynamic_array

End If

Next

Removing Values Dynamically

We can utilise the same logic to decrease the array. In the example the value "last" will be removed from the array.

Dim Dynamic_array **As** Variant

Dynamic_array = **Array**("first", "middle", "last")

ReDim Preserve Dynamic_array(0 **To** UBound(Dynamic_array) 1) *' Resize Preserve while dropping the last value*

Resetting an Array and Reusing Dynamically

We can as well re-utilise the arrays we create as not to have many on memory, which would make the run time slower. This is useful for arrays of various sizes. One snippet you could use to re-utilise the array is to **ReDim** the array back to (0), attribute one variable to the array and freely increase the array again.

In the snippet below I construct an array with the values 1 to 40, empty the array, and refill the array with values 40 to 100, all this done dynamically.

```
Dim Dynamic_array As Variant
```

```
For n = 1 To 100
```

```
If IsEmpty(Dynamic_array) Then ReDim Dynamic_array(0)
```

```
Dynamic_array(0) = n
```

```
ElseIf Dynamic_array(0) = "" Then
```

```
'if first variant is empty ( = "" ) then give it the value of n Dynamic_array(0) =  
n
```

```
Else
```

```
ReDim Preserve Dynamic_array(0 To UBound(Dynamic_array) + 1)
```

```
Dynamic_array(UBound(Dynamic_array)) = n
```

```
End If
```

```
If n = 40 Then
```

```
ReDim Dynamic_array(0)
```

```
'Resizing the array back to one variable without Preserving, 'leaving the first  
value of the array empty
```

```
End If
```

```
Next
```

Section 18.3: Jagged Arrays (Arrays of Arrays)

Jagged Arrays NOT Multidimensional Arrays

Arrays of Arrays(Jagged Arrays) are not the same as Multidimensional

Arrays if you think about them visually Multidimensional Arrays would look like Matrices (Rectangular) with defined number of elements on their dimensions(inside arrays), while Jagged array would be like a yearly calendar with the inside arrays having different number of elements, like days in on different months.

Although Jagged Arrays are quite messy and tricky to use due to their nested levels and don't have much type safety, but they are very flexible, allow you to manipulate different types of data quite easily, and don't need to contain unused or empty elements.

Creating a Jagged Array

In the below example we will initialise a jagged array containing two arrays one for Names and another for Numbers, and then accessing one element of each

```
Dim OuterArray() As Variant
```

```
Dim Names() As Variant
```

```
Dim Numbers() As Variant
```

'arrays are declared variant so we can access attribute any data type to its elements

```
Names = Array("Person1", "Person2", "Person3") Numbers = Array("001", "002", "003")
```

```
OuterArray = Array(Names, Numbers)
```

'Directly giving OuterArray an array containing both Names and Numbers arrays inside

```
Debug.Print OuterArray(0)(1)
```

```
Debug.Print OuterArray(1)(1)
```

'accessing elements inside the jagged by giving the coordenades of the element

Dynamically Creating and Reading Jagged Arrays

We can as well be more dynamic in our appox to construct the arrays, imagine that we have a customer data sheet in excel and we want to construct an array to output the customer details.

Name Phone - Email - Customer Number Person1 153486231 1@STACK - 001
Person2 153486242 2@STACK - 002
Person3 153486253 3@STACK - 003
Person4 153486264 4@STACK - 004
Person5 153486275 5@STACK - 005

We will Dynamically construct an Header array and a Customers array, the Header will contain the column titles and the Customers array will contain the information of each customer/row as arrays.

Dim Headers **As** Variant

' headers array with the top section of the customer data sheet

For c = 1 **To** 4

If IsEmpty(Headers) **Then**

ReDim Headers(0)

Headers(0) = Cells(1, c).Value

Else

ReDim Preserve Headers(0 **To** UBound(Headers) + 1)

Headers(UBound(Headers)) = Cells(1, c).Value **End If**

Next

Dim Customers **As** Variant

'Customers array will contain arrays of customer values

Dim Customer_Values **As** Variant

'Customer_Values will be an array of the customer in its elements (Name-Phone-Email-CustNum)

For r = 2 **To** 6

'iterate through the customers/rows **For** c = 1 **To** 4

'iterate through the values/columns

'build array containing customer values **If** IsEmpty(Customer_Values) **Then**

ReDim Customer_Values(0)

Customer_Values(0) = Cells(r, c).Value **ElseIf** Customer_Values(0) = ""

Then

```

Customer_Values( 0) = Cells(r, c).Value
Else
ReDim Preserve Customer_Values(0 To UBound(Customer_Values) + 1)
Customer_Values(UBound(Customer_Values)) = Cells(r, c).Value End If
Next

'add customer_values array to Customers Array If IsEmpty(Customers)
Then
ReDim Customers(0)

Customers( 0) = Customer_Values
Else
ReDim Preserve Customers(0 To UBound(Customers) + 1)
Customers(UBound(Customers)) = Customer_Values End If

'reset Customer_Values to rebuild a new array if needed ReDim
Customer_Values(0)
Next
Dim Main_Array(0 To 1) As Variant
'main array will contain both the Headers and Customers
Main_Array(0) = Headers Main_Array(1) = Customers
To better understand the way to Dynamically construct a one dimensional
array please check Dynamic Arrays (Array Resizing and Dynamic Handling)
on the Arrays documentation.

```

The Result of the above snippet is an Jagged Array with two arrays one of those arrays with 4 elements, 2 indention levels, and the other being itself another Jagged Array containing 5 arrays of 4 elements each and 3 indention levels, see below the structure:

```

Main_Array( 0) - Headers Array("Name","Phone","Email","Customer
Number") (1) - Customers(0)
Array("Person1",153486231,"1@STACK",001) Customers(1)
Array("Person2",153486242,"2@STACK",002) ...
Customers(4) Array("Person5",153486275,"5@STACK",005)

```

To access the information you'll have to bear in mind the structure of the Jagged Array you create, in the above example you can see that the Main

Array contains an Array of Headers and an Array of Arrays (Customers) hence with different ways of accessing the elements.

Now we'll read the information of the Main Array and print out each of the Customers information as Info Type: Info.

```
For n = 0 To UBound(Main_Array(1))  
'n to iterate from first to last array in Main_Array(1)  
For j = 0 To UBound(Main_Array(1)(n))  
'j will iterate from first to last element in each array of Main_Array(1)  
Debug.Print Main_Array(0)(j) & ": " & Main_Array(1)(n)(j)  
  
'print Main_Array(0)(j) which is the header and Main_Array(0)(n)(j) which  
is the element in the customer array  
'we can call the header with j as the header array has the same structure as  
the customer array  
Next  
Next
```

REMEMBER to keep track of the structure of your Jagged Array, in the example above to access the Name of a customer is by accessing Main_Array -> Customers -> CustomerNumber -> Name which is three levels, to return "Person4" you'll need the location of Customers in the Main_Array, then the Location of customer four on the Customers Jagged array and lastly the location of the element you need, in this case Main_Array(**1**)(**3**)(**0**) which is Main_Array(Customers)(CustomerNumber)(Name).

Section 18.4: Declaring an Array in VBA

Declaring an array is very similar to declaring a variable, except you need to declare the dimension of the Array right after its name:

```
Dim myArray(9) As String 'Declaring an array that will contain up to 10 strings
```

By default, Arrays in VBA are **indexed from ZERO**, thus, the number inside the parenthesis doesn't refer to the size of the array, but rather to **the index of the last element**

Accessing Elements

Accessing an element of the Array is done by using the name of the Array,

followed by the index of the element, inside parenthesis:

```
myArray( 0) = "first element" myArray(5) = "sixth element" myArray(9) =  
"last element"
```

Array Indexing

You can change Arrays indexing by placing this line at the top of a module:

Option Base 1

With this line, all Arrays declared in the module will be **indexed from ONE**.

Specific Index

You can also declare each Array with its own index by using the To keyword, and the lower and upper bound (= index):

```
Dim mySecondArray(1 To 12) As String 'Array of 12 strings indexed from 1  
to 12 Dim myThirdArray(13 To 24) As String 'Array of 12 strings indexed  
from 13 to 24
```

Dynamic Declaration

When you do not know the size of your Array prior to its declaration, you can use the dynamic declaration, and the **ReDim** keyword:

```
Dim myDynamicArray() As Strings 'Creates an Array of an unknown  
number of strings ReDim myDynamicArray(5) 'This resets the array to 6  
elements
```

Note that using the **ReDim** keyword will wipe out any previous content of your Array. To prevent this, you can use the Preserve keyword after **ReDim**:

```
Dim myDynamicArray(5) As String  
myDynamicArray(0) = "Something I want to keep"  
ReDim Preserve myDynamicArray(8) 'Expand the size to up to 9 strings  
Debug.Print myDynamicArray(0) ' still prints the element
```

Section 18.5: Use of Split to create an array from a string

Split Function

returns a zero-based, one dimensional array containing a specified number of substrings.

Syntax

Split(expression [, delimiter [, limit [, compare]]])

Part

expression

delimiter
limit

Description

Required. String expression containing substrings and delimiters. If *expression* is a zero-length string("") or vbNullString), **Split** returns an empty array containing no elements and no data. In this case, the returned array will have a LBound of 0 and a UBound of -1.

Optional. String character used to identify substring limits. If omitted, the space character (" ") is assumed to be the delimiter. If ***delimiter*** is a zero-length string, a single-element array containing the entire ***expression*** string is returned.

Optional. Number of substrings to be returned; -1 indicates that all substrings are returned.

compare

Optional. Numeric value indicating the kind of comparison to use when evaluating substrings. See Settings section for values.

Settings

The ***compare*** argument can have the following values:

Constant Description

vbBinaryCompare vbTextCompare

Value Description

-1 Performs a comparison using the setting of the **Option Compare** statement. 0 Performs a binary comparison.

1 Performs a textual comparison.

vbDatabaseCompare 2 Microsoft Access only. Performs a comparison based on information in your database.

Example

In this example it is demonstrated how Split works by showing several styles. The comments will show the result set for each of the different performed Split options. Finally it is demonstrated how to loop over the returned string array.

Sub Test

Dim textArray() **as** String

textArray = Split("Tech on the Net") *'Result: {"Tech", "on", "the", "Net"}'*

textArray = Split("172.23.56.4", ".") *'Result: {"172", "23", "56", "4"}'*

textArray = Split("A;B;C;D", ";") *'Result: {"A", "B", "C", "D"}'*

textArray = Split("A;B;C;D", ";", 1) *'Result: {"A;B;C;D"}'*

textArray = Split("A;B;C;D", ";", 2) *'Result: {"A", "B;C;D"}'*

textArray = Split("A;B;C;D", ";", 3) *'Result: {"A", "B", "C;D"}'*

textArray = Split("A;B;C;D", ";", 4) *'Result: {"A", "B", "C", "D"}'*

'You can iterate over the created array **Dim** counter **As** Long

For counter = LBound(textArray) **To** UBound(textArray) Debug.Print
textArray(counter)

Next

End Sub

Section 18.6: Iterating elements of an array

For...Next

Using the iterator variable as the index number is the fastest way to iterate the elements of an array:

Dim items **As** Variant

items = Array(0, 1, 2, 3)

Dim index **As** Integer

For index = LBound(items) **To** UBound(items)

'assumes value can be implicitly converted to a String:

Debug.Print items(index)

Next

Nested loops can be used to iterate multi-dimensional arrays:

Dim items(0 **To** 1, 0 **To** 1) **As** Integer items(0, 0) = 0

items(0, 1) = 1

items(1, 0) = 2

items(1, 1) = 3

Dim outer **As** Integer

```
Dim inner As Integer
```

```
For outer = LBound(items, 1) To UBound(items, 1)
```

```
For inner = LBound(items, 2) To UBound(items, 2) 'assumes value can be implicitly converted to a String: Debug.Print items(outer, inner)
```

```
Next
```

```
Next
```

```
For Each...Next
```

A **For Each...Next** loop can also be used to iterate arrays, if performance doesn't matter:

```
Dim items As Variant items = Array(0, 1, 2, 3)
```

```
Dim item As Variant 'must be variant
```

```
For Each item In items
```

```
'assumes value can be implicitly converted to a String:
```

```
Debug.Print item Next
```

A **For Each** loop will iterate all dimensions from outer to inner (the same order as the elements are laid out in memory), so there is no need for nested loops:

```
Dim items(0 To 1, 0 To 1) As Integer items(0, 0) = 0
```

```
items(1, 0) = 1
```

```
items(0, 1) = 2
```

```
items(1, 1) = 3
```

```
Dim item As Variant 'must be Variant
```

```
For Each item In items
```

```
'assumes value can be implicitly converted to a String: Debug.Print item
```

```
Next
```

Note that **For Each** loops are best used to iterate Collection objects, if performance matters.

All 4 snippets above produce the same output:

0

1

2

3

Chapter 19: Copying, returning and passing arrays

Section 19.1: Passing Arrays to Procedures

Arrays can be passed to procedures by putting () after the name of the array variable.

```
Function countElements(ByRef arr() As Double) As Long  
countElements = UBound(arr) LBound(arr) + 1  
End Function
```

Arrays *must* be passed by reference. If no passing mechanism is specified, e.g. myFunction(arr()), then VBA will assume **ByRef** by default, however it is good coding practice to make it explicit. Trying to pass an array by value, e.g. myFunction(**ByVal** arr()) will result in an "Array argument must be ByRef" compilation error (or a "Syntax error" compilation error if Auto Syntax Check is not checked in the VBE options).

Passing by reference means that any changes to the array will be preserved in the calling procedure.

```
Sub testArrayPassing()  
Dim source(0 To 1) As Long  
source(0) = 3  
source(1) = 1
```

```
Debug.Print doubleAndSum(source) ' outputs 8  
Debug.Print source(0); source(1) ' outputs 6 2  
End Sub
```

```
Function doubleAndSum(ByRef arr() As Long)  
arr(0) = arr(0) * 2  
arr(1) = arr(1) * 2  
doubleAndSum = arr(0) + arr(1)  
End Function
```

If you want to avoid changing the original array then be careful to write the function so that it doesn't change any elements.

```

Function doubleAndSum(ByRef arr() As Long) doubleAndSum = arr(0) * 2
+ arr(1) * 2
End Function

```

Alternatively create a working copy of the array and work with the copy.

```

Function doubleAndSum(ByRef arr() As Long) Dim copyOfArr() As Long
copyOfArr = arr

```

```

copyOfArr(0) = copyOfArr(0) * 2 copyOfArr(1) = copyOfArr(1) * 2
doubleAndSum = copyOfArr(0) + copyOfArr(1) End Function

```

Section 19.2: Copying Arrays

You can copy a VBA array into an array of the same type using the = operator. The arrays must be of the same type otherwise the code will throw a "Can't assign to array" compilation error.

```

Dim source(0 to 2) As Long
Dim destinationLong() As Long Dim destinationDouble() As Double

```

```

destinationLong = source 'copies contents of source into destinationLong
destinationDouble = source 'does not compile

```

The source array can be fixed or dynamic, but the destination array must be dynamic. Trying to copy to a fixed array will throw a "Can't assign to array" compilation error. Any preexisting data in the receiving array is lost and its bounds and dimensions are changed to the same as the source array.

```

Dim source() As Long ReDim source(0 To 2)
Dim fixed(0 To 2) As Long Dim dynamic() As Long
fixed = source 'does not compile dynamic = source 'does compile
Dim dynamic2() As Long
ReDim dynamic2(0 to 6, 3 to 99)
dynamic2 = source 'dynamic2 now has dimension (0 to 2)

```

Once the copy is made the two arrays are separate in memory, i.e. the two variables are not references to same underlying data, so changes made to one array do not appear in the other.

```
Dim source(0 To 2) As Long Dim destination() As Long
```

```
source( 0) = 3
```

```
source(1) = 1
```

```
source(2) = 4
```

```
destination = source destination(0) = 2
```

```
Debug.Print source(0); source(1); source(2) ' outputs: 3 1 4 Debug.Print
```

```
destination(0); destination(1); destination(2) ' outputs: 2 1 4
```

Copying Arrays of Objects

With arrays of objects the *references* to those objects are copied, not the objects themselves. If a change is made to an object in one array it will also appear to be changed in the other array - they are both referencing the same object. However, setting an element to a different object in one array won't set it to that object the other array.

```
Dim source(0 To 2) As Range Dim destination() As Range
```

```
Set source(0) = Range("A1"): source(0).Value = 3
```

```
Set source(1) = Range("A2"): source(1).Value = 1
```

```
Set source(2) = Range("A3"): source(2).Value = 4
```

```
destination = source Set destination(0) = Range("A4") ' reference changed in destination but not source
```

```
destination(0).Value = 2 destination(1).Value = 5
```

```
' affects an object only in destination
```

```
' affects an object in both source and destination
```

```
Debug.Print source(0); source(1); source(2)
```

```
Debug.Print destination(0); destination(1); destination(2)
```

```
' outputs 3 5 4 ' outputs 2 5 4
```

Variants Containing an Array

You can also copy an array into and from a variant variable. When copying from a variant, it must contain an array of the same type as the receiving array otherwise it will throw a "Type mismatch" runtime error.

```
Dim var As Variant
```

```
Dim source(0 To 2) As Range Dim destination() As Range
```

```
var = source
destination = var
var = 5
destination = var ' throws runtime error
```

Section 19.3: Returning Arrays from Functions

A function in a normal module (but not a Class module) can return an array by putting () after the data type.

```
Function arrayOfPiDigits() As Long()
Dim outputArray(0 To 2) As Long
```

```
outputArray(0) = 3
outputArray(1) = 1
outputArray(2) = 4
```

```
arrayOfPiDigits = outputArray
End Function
```

The result of the function can then be put into a dynamic array of the same type or a variant. The elements can also be accessed directly by using a second set of brackets, however this will call the function each time, so its best to store the results in a new array if you plan to use them more than once

```
Sub arrayExample()
Dim destination() As Long Dim var As Variant
destination = arrayOfPiDigits() var = arrayOfPiDigits
```

```
Debug.Print destination( 0) Debug.Print var(1)
Debug.Print arrayOfPiDigits()(2)
```

```
' outputs 3
' outputs 1
' outputs 4
```

```
End Sub
```

Note that what is returned is actually a copy of the array inside the function, not a reference. So if the function returns the contents of a Static array its data

can't be changed by the calling procedure.

Outputting an Array via an output argument

It is normally good coding practice for a procedure's arguments to be inputs and to output via the return value. However, the limitations of VBA sometimes make it necessary for a procedure to output data via a **ByRef** argument.

Outputting to a fixed array

```
Sub threePiDigits(ByRef destination() As Long) destination(0) = 3
destination(1) = 1
destination(2) = 4
End Sub
```

```
Sub printPiDigits()
Dim digits(0 To 2) As Long
threePiDigits digits
Debug.Print digits(0); digits(1); digits(2) ' outputs 3 1 4 End Sub
```

Outputting an Array from a Class method

An output argument can also be used to output an array from a method/procedure in a Class module

' Class Module 'MathConstants'

```
Sub threePiDigits(ByRef destination() As Long) ReDim destination(0 To 2)

destination( 0) = 3
destination(1) = 1
destination(2) = 4
End Sub
```

' Standard Code Module'

```
Sub printPiDigits()
Dim digits() As Long
Dim mathConsts As New MathConstants

mathConsts.threePiDigits digits
Debug.Print digits(0); digits(1); digits(2) ' outputs 3 1 4 End Sub
```

Chapter 20: Collections

Section 20.1: Getting the Item Count of a Collection

The number of items in a Collection can be obtained by calling its .Count function:

Syntax:

.Count()

Sample Usage:

Public Sub Example()

Dim foo **As New** Collection

With foo

.Add "One"

.Add "Two"

.Add "Three"

.Add "Four"

End With

Debug.Print foo.Count *'Prints 4*

End Sub

Section 20.2: Determining if a Key or Item Exists in a Collection

Keys

Unlike a Scripting.Dictionary, a Collection does not have a method for determining if a given key exists *or* a way to retrieve keys that are present in the Collection. The only method to determine if a key is present is to use the error handler:

Public Function KeyExistsInCollection(**ByVal** key **As** String, _
ByRef container **As** Collection) **As** Boolean

With Err

If container **Is Nothing Then** .Raise 91

On Error Resume Next

Dim temp **As** Variant


```
temp = container.Item(key)
```

```
On Error GoTo 0
```

```
If .Number = 0 Then
```

```
KeyExistsInCollection = True
```

```
ElseIf .Number <> 5 Then .Raise .Number
```

```
End If
```

```
End With
```

```
End Function
```

Items

The only way to determine if an item is contained in a Collection is to iterate over the Collection until the item is located. Note that because a Collection can contain either primitives or objects, some extra handling is needed to avoid run-time errors during the comparisons:

```
Public Function ItemExistsInCollection(ByRef target As Variant, _ ByRef  
container As Collection) As Boolean Dim candidate As Variant  
Dim found As Boolean
```

```
For Each candidate In container
```

```
Select Case True
```

```
Case IsObject(candidate) And IsObject(target) found = candidate Is target
```

```
Case IsObject(candidate), IsObject(target) found = False
```

```
Case Else
```

```
found = (candidate = target)
```

```
End Select
```

```
If found Then
```

```
ItemExistsInCollection = True
```

```
Exit Function
```

```
End If
```

```
Next
```

```
End Function
```

Section 20.3: Adding Items to a Collection

Items are added to a Collection by calling its .Add method:

Syntax:

.Add(item, [key], [before, after])

Parameter Description

item

The item to store in the Collection. This can be essentially any value that a variable can be assigned to, including primitive types, arrays, objects, and **Nothing**.

Optional. A **String** that serves as a unique identifier for retrieving items from the Collection. If the *key* specified key already exists in the Collection, it will result in a Run-time error 457: "This key is already associated with an element of this collection".

Optional. An existing key (**String** value) *or* index (numeric value) to insert the item before in the

Collection . If a value is given, the *after* parameter **must** be empty or a Run-time error 5: "Invalid *before* procedure call or argument" will result. If a **String** key is passed that does not exist in the Collection, a Run-time error 5: "Invalid procedure call or argument" will result. If a numeric index is passed that is does not exist in the Collection, a Run-time error 9: "Subscript out of range" will result.

Optional. An existing key (**String** value) *or* index (numeric value) to insert the item after in the *after* Collection. If a value is given, the *before* parameter **must** be empty. Errors raised are identical to the *before* parameter.

Notes:

Keys are **not** case-sensitive. .Add "Bar", "Foo" and .Add "Baz", "foo" will result in a key collision.

If neither of the optional *before* or *after* parameters are given, the item will be added after the last item in the Collection.

Insertions made by specifying a *before* or *after* parameter will alter the numeric indexes of existing members to match their new position. This means that care should be taken when making insertions in loops using numeric indexes.

Sample Usage:

```
Public Sub Example()
```

```
Dim foo As New Collection
```

```
With foo
```

```
.Add "One" 'No key. This item can only be retrieved by index. .Add "Two",  
"Second" 'Key given. Can be retrieved by key or index. .Add "Three", , 1  
'Inserted at the start of the collection. .Add "Four", , , 1 'Inserted at index 2.
```

```
End With
```

```
Dim member As Variant
```

```
For Each member In foo
```

```
Debug.Print member 'Prints "Three, Four, One, Two" Next
```

```
End Sub
```

Section 20.4: Removing Items From a Collection

Items are removed from a Collection by calling its .Remove method:

Syntax:

```
.Remove(index)
```

Parameter Description

The item to remove from the Collection. If the value passed is a numeric type or Variant with a numeric sub-type, it will be interpreted as a numeric index. If the value passed is a **String** or Variant *index* containing a string, it will be interpreted as the a key. If a String key is passed that does not exist in the Collection, a Run-time error 5: "Invalid procedure call or argument" will result. If a numeric index is passed that is does not exist in the Collection, a Run-time error 9: "Subscript out of range" will result.

Notes:

Removing an item from a Collection will change the numeric indexes of all the items after it in the Collection. **For** loops that use numeric indexes and

remove items should run *backwards* (**Step 1**) to prevent subscript exceptions and skipped items.

Items should generally *not* be removed from a Collection from inside of a **For Each** loop as it can give unpredictable results.

Sample Usage:

```
Public Sub Example()
```

```
Dim foo As New Collection
```

```
With foo
```

```
.Add "One"
```

```
.Add "Two", "Second" .Add "Three" .Add "Four"
```

```
End With
```

```
foo.Remove 1
```

```
foo.Remove "Second" foo.Remove foo.Count
```

```
'Removes the first item.
```

```
'Removes the item with key "Second". 'Removes the last item.
```

```
Dim member As Variant For Each member In foo Debug.Print member
```

```
'Prints "Three" Next
```

Section 20.5: Retrieving Items From a Collection

Items can be retrieved from a Collection by calling the .Item function.

Syntax:

```
.Item(index)
```

Parameter Description

The item to retrieve from the Collection. If the value passed is a numeric type or Variant with a numeric sub-type, it will be interpreted as a numeric index. If the value passed is a **String** or Variant

index containing a string, it will be interpreted as the a key. If a String key is passed that does not exist in the Collection, a Run-time error 5: "Invalid procedure call or argument" will result. If a numeric index is passed that is

does not exist in the Collection, a Run-time error 9: "Subscript out of range" will result.

Notes:

.Item is the default member of Collection. This allows flexibility in syntax as demonstrated in the sample usage below.

Numeric indexes are 1-based.

Keys are **not** case-sensitive. .Item("Foo") and .Item("foo") refer to the same key.

The *index* parameter is **not** implicitly cast to a number from a String or visa-versa. It is entirely possible that .Item(1) and .Item("1") refer to different items of the Collection.

Sample Usage (Indexes):

```
Public Sub Example()
```

```
Dim foo As New Collection
```

```
With foo
```

```
.Add "One" .Add "Two" .Add "Three" .Add "Four"
```

```
End With
```

```
Dim index As Long
```

```
For index = 1 To foo.Count
```

```
Debug.Print foo.Item(index) 'Prints One, Two, Three, Four Next
```

```
End Sub
```

Sample Usage (Keys):

```
Public Sub Example()
```

```
Dim keys() As String
```

```
keys = Split("Foo,Bar,Baz", ",") Dim values() As String
```

```
values = Split("One,Two,Three", ",")
```

```
Dim foo As New Collection
```

```
Dim index As Long
```

```
For index = LBound(values) To UBound(values)
```

```
foo.Add values(index), keys(index) Next
```

Debug.Print foo.Item("Bar") *'Prints "Two"*

Sample Usage (Alternate Syntax):

Public Sub Example()

Dim foo **As New** Collection

With foo

.Add "One", "Foo" .Add "Two", "Bar" .Add "Three", "Baz"

End With

'All lines below print "Two"

Debug.Print foo.Item("Bar") *'Explicit call syntax.* Debug.Print foo("Bar")

'Default member call syntax. Debug.Print foo!Bar *'Bang syntax.*

End Sub

Note that bang (!) syntax is allowed because .Item is the default member and can take a single **String** argument. The utility of this syntax is questionable.

Section 20.6: Clearing All Items From a Collection

The easiest way to clear all of the items from a Collection is to simply replace it with a new Collection and let the old one go out of scope:

Public Sub Example()

Dim foo **As New** Collection

With foo

.Add "One"

.Add "Two"

.Add "Three"

End With

Debug.Print foo.Count *'Prints 3*

Set foo = **New** Collection

Debug.Print foo.Count *'Prints 0*

End Sub

However, if there are multiple references to the Collection held, this method

will only give you an empty Collection *for the variable that is assigned.*

```
Public Sub Example()
```

```
Dim foo As New Collection Dim bar As Collection
```

```
With foo
```

```
.Add "One" .Add "Two" .Add "Three"
```

```
End With
```

```
Set bar = foo
```

```
Set foo = New Collection
```

```
Debug.Print foo.Count 'Prints 0 Debug.Print bar.Count 'Prints 3
```

In this case, the easiest way to clear the contents is by looping through the number of items in the Collection and repeatedly remove the lowest item:

```
Public Sub ClearCollection(ByRef container As Collection) Dim index As  
Long
```

```
For index = 1 To container.Count
```

```
    container.Remove 1
```

```
Next
```

```
End Sub
```

Chapter 21: Operators

Section 21.1: Concatenation Operators

VBA supports 2 different concatenation operators, + and & and both perform the exact same function when used with **String** types - the right-hand **String** is appended to the end of the left-hand **String**.

If the & operator is used with a variable type other than a **String**, it is implicitly cast to a **String** before being concatenated.

Note that the + concatenation operator is an overload of the + addition operator. The behavior of + is determined by the variable types of the operands and precedence of operator types. If both operands are typed as a **String** or Variant with a sub-type of **String**, they are concatenated:

```
Public Sub Example()
```

```
Dim left As String
Dim right As String
```

```
left = "5"
right = "5"
Debug.Print left + right 'Prints "55"
End Sub
```

If *either* side is a numeric type and the other side is a **String** that can be coerced into a number, the type precedence of mathematical operators causes the operator to be treated as the addition operator and the numeric values are added:

```
Public Sub Example() Dim left As Variant Dim right As String
```

```
left = 5
right = "5"
Debug.Print left + right 'Prints 10 End Sub
```

This behavior can lead to subtle, hard to debug errors - especially if Variant types are being used, so only the & operator should typically be used for concatenation.

Section 21.2: Comparison Operators

TokenName = Equal to

< > Not equal to > Greater than < Less than

Description

Returns **True** if the left-hand and right-hand operands are equal. Note that this is an overload of the assignment operator.

Returns **True** if the left-hand and right-hand operands are not equal. Returns **True** if the left-hand operand is greater than the right-hand operand. Returns **True** if the left-hand operand is less than the right-hand operand.

>= Greater than or equal Returns **True** if the left-hand operand is greater than or equal to the right-hand operand.

<=

Less than or equal

Returns **True** if the left-hand operand is less than or equal to the right-hand operand.

Returns **True** if the left-hand object reference is the same instance as the right-hand object reference. It can also be used with **Nothing** (the null object reference) on either side. **Note:** The Is operator will attempt to coerce both operands into an **Object** before performing the comparison. If either side is a primitive type or a

Is Reference equity Variant that does not contain an object (either a non-object subtype or vtEmpty), the comparison will result in a Run-time error 424 - "Object required". If either operand belongs to a different *interface* of the same object, the comparison will return **True**. If you need to test for equity of both the instance *and* the interface, use ObjPtr(left) = ObjPtr(right) instead.

Notes

The VBA syntax allows for "chains" of comparison operators, but these constructs should generally be avoided. Comparisons are always performed from left to right on only 2 operands at a time, and each comparison results in a **Boolean**. For example, the expression...

a = 2: b = 1: c = 0 expr = a > b > c

...may be read in some contexts as a test of whether b is between a and c. In VBA, this evaluates as follows:

a = 2: b = 1: c = 0

expr = a > b > c

expr = (2 > 1) > 0

expr = **True** > 0

expr = 1 > 0 'CInt(True) = -1 expr = **False**

Any comparison operator other than Is used with an **Object** as an operand will be performed on the return value of the **Object**'s default member. If the object does not have a default member, the comparison will result in a

Runtime error 438 - "Object doesn't support his property or method".

If the **Object** is uninitialized, the comparison will result in a Run-time error 91 - "Object variable or With block variable not set".

If the literal **Nothing** is used with any comparison operator other than Is, it will result in a Compile error - "Invalid use of object".

If the default member of the **Object** is *another Object*, VBA will continually call the default member of each successive return value until a primitive type is returned or an error is raised. For example, assume SomeClass has a default member of Value, which is an instance of ChildClass with a default member of ChildValue. The comparison...

```
Set x = New SomeClass Debug.Print x > 42
```

...will be evaluated as:

```
Set x = New SomeClass
```

```
Debug.Print x.Value.ChildValue > 42
```

If either operand is a numeric type and the *other* operand is a **String** or Variant of subtype **String**, a numeric comparison will be performed. In this case, if the **String** cannot be cast to a number, a Run-time error 13 - "Type mismatch" will result from the comparison.

If **both** operands are a **String** or a Variant of subtype **String**, a string comparison will be performed based on the Option Compare setting of the code module. These comparisons are performed on a character by character basis. Note that the *character representation* of a **String** containing a number is **not** the same as a comparison of the numeric values:

```
Public Sub Example() Dim left As Variant Dim right As Variant
```

```
left = "42"
```

```
right = "5"
```

```
Debug.Print left > right 'Prints False Debug.Print Val(left) > Val(right)
```

```
'Prints True
```

```
End Sub
```

For this reason, make sure that **String** or Variant variables are cast to numbers

before performing numeric inequity comparisons on them.

If one operand is a **Date**, a numeric comparison on the underlying **Double** value will be performed if the other operand is numeric or can be cast to a numeric type.

If the other operand is a **String** or a Variant of subtype **String** that can be cast to a **Date** using the current locale, the **String** will be cast to a **Date**. If it cannot be cast to a **Date** in the current locale, a Run-time error 13 - "Type mismatch" will result from the comparison.

Care should be taken when making comparisons between **Double** or **Single** values and Booleans. Unlike other numeric types, non-zero values cannot be assumed to be **True** due to VBA's behavior of promoting the data type of a comparison involving a floating point number to **Double**:

```
Public Sub Example() Dim Test As Double
```

```
Test = 42 Debug.Print CBool(Test) 'Prints True. 'True is promoted to Double  
- Test is not cast to Boolean
```

```
Debug.Print Test = True 'Prints False
```

```
'With explicit casts:
```

```
Debug.Print CBool(Test) = True Debug.Print CDb(1) = CDb(True)
```

```
End Sub
```

```
'Prints True 'Prints True
```

Section 21.3: Bitwise \ Logical Operators

All of the logical operators in VBA can be thought of as "overrides" of the bitwise operators of the same name. Technically, they are *always* treated as bitwise operators. All of the comparison operators in VBA return a Boolean, which will always have none of its bits set (**False**) or *all* of its bits set (**True**). But it will treat a value with *any* bit set as **True**. This means that the result of the casting the bitwise result of an expression to a **Boolean** (see Comparison Operators) will always be the same as treating it as a logical expression.

Assigning the result of an expression using one of these operators will give the bitwise result. Note that in the truth tables below, 0 is equivalent to **False** and 1 is equivalent to **True**.

And

Returns **True** if the expressions on both sides evaluate to **True**.

Left-hand Operand Right-hand Operand Result

1 0 0 1 1 1

Or

Returns **True** if either side of the expression evaluates to **True**.

Left-hand Operand Right-hand Operand Result

0 0 0

0 1 1

1 0 1

1 1 1

Not

Returns **True** if the expression evaluates to **False** and **False** if the expression evaluations to **True**.

Right-hand Operand Result 0 1 1 0

Not is the only operand without a Left-hand operand. The Visual Basic Editor will automatically simplify expressions with a left hand argument. If you type...

Debug.Print x **Not** y

...the VBE will change the line to:

Debug.Print **Not** x

Similar simplifications will be made to any expression that contains a left-hand operand (including expressions) for **Not**.

Xor

Also known as "exclusive or". Returns **True** if both expressions evaluate to different results.

Left-hand Operand Right-hand Operand Result

0 0 0

0 1 1

1 0 1

1 1 0

Note that although the **Xor** operator can be *used* like a logical operator, there is absolutely no reason to do so as it gives the same result as the comparison operator `<>`.

Eqv

Also known as "equivalence". Returns **True** when both expressions evaluate to the same result.

Left-hand Operand	Right-hand Operand	Result
0	0	1
1	1	1

Note that the Eqv function is *very* rarely used as `x Eqv y` is equivalent to the much more readable **Not** (`x Xor y`).

Imp

Also known as "implication". Returns **True** if both operands are the same *or* the second operand is **True**.

Left-hand Operand	Right-hand Operand	Result
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	0
1	1	1

Note that the Imp function is very rarely used. A good rule of thumb is that if you can't explain what it means, you should use another construct.

Section 21.4: Mathematical Operators

Listed in order of precedence:

Token Name

`^` Exponentiation

`/` Division

Description

Return the result of raising the left-hand operand to the power of the right-hand operand. Note that the value returned by exponentiation is *always* a **Double**, regardless of the value types being divided. Any coercion of the result into a variable type takes place *after* the calculation is performed. Returns the result of dividing the left-hand operand by the right-hand

operand. Note that the value returned by division is *always* a **Double**, regardless of the value types being divided. Any coercion of the result into a variable type takes place *after* the calculation is performed.

* Multiplication1 Returns the product of 2 operands.

\ Integer Division

Mod Modulo

- Subtraction2

+ Addition2 Returns the integer result of dividing the left-hand operand by the right-hand operand *after* rounding both sides with .5 rounding down. Any remainder of the division is ignored. If the right-hand operand (the divisor) is 0, a Run-time error 11: Division by zero will result. Note that this is *after* all rounding is performed - expressions such as **3 \ 0.4** will also result in a division by zero error.

Returns the integer remainder of dividing the left-hand operand by the right-hand operand. The operand on each side is rounded to an integer *before* the division, with .5 rounding down. For example, both **8.6 Mod 3** and **12 Mod 2.6** result in 0. If the right-hand operand (the divisor) is 0, a Run-time error 11: Division by zero will result. Note that this is *after* all rounding is performed - expressions such as **3 Mod 0.4** will also result in a division by zero error.

Returns the result of subtracting the right-hand operand from the left-hand operand. Returns the sum of 2 operands. Note that this token also treated as a concatenation operator when it is applied to a **String**. See **Concatenation Operators**.

1 Multiplication and division are treated as having the same precedence. 2 Addition and subtraction are treated as having the same precedence.

Chapter 22: Sorting

Unlike the .NET framework, the Visual Basic for Applications library does not include routines to sort arrays.

There are two types of workarounds: 1) implementing a sorting algorithm from scratch, or 2) using sorting routines in other commonly-available

libraries.

Section 22.1: Algorithm Implementation - Quick Sort on a OneDimensional Array

From VBA array sort function?

```
Public Sub QuickSort(vArray As Variant, inLow As Long, inHi As Long)
```

```
    Dim pivot As Variant
```

```
    Dim tmpSwap As Variant
```

```
    Dim tmpLow As Long
```

```
    Dim tmpHi As Long
```

```
    tmpLow = inLow
```

```
    tmpHi = inHi
```

```
    pivot = vArray((inLow + inHi) \ 2)
```

```
    While (tmpLow <= tmpHi)
```

```
        While (vArray(tmpLow) < pivot And tmpLow < inHi)
```

```
            tmpLow = tmpLow + 1
```

```
        Wend
```

```
        While (pivot < vArray(tmpHi) And tmpHi > inLow)
```

```
            tmpHi = tmpHi - 1
```

```
        Wend
```

```
    If (tmpLow <= tmpHi) Then
```

```
        tmpSwap = vArray(tmpLow)
```

```
        vArray(tmpLow) = vArray(tmpHi)
```

```
        vArray(tmpHi) = tmpSwap
```

```
        tmpLow = tmpLow + 1
```

```
        tmpHi = tmpHi - 1
```

```
    End If
```

```
    Wend
```

```
    If (inLow < tmpHi) Then QuickSort vArray, inLow, tmpHi
```

```
    If (tmpLow < inHi) Then QuickSort vArray, tmpLow, inHi
```

```
    End Sub
```

Section 22.2: Using the Excel Library to Sort a OneDimensional Array

This code takes advantage of the Sort class in the Microsoft Excel Object Library.

For further reading, see:

[Copy a range to a virtual range](#)

[How to copy selected range into given array?](#)

Sub testExcelSort()

Dim arr **As** Variant

InitArray arr ExcelSort arr

End Sub

Private Sub InitArray(arr **As** Variant)

Const size = 10 **ReDim** arr(size)

Dim i **As** Integer

' Add descending numbers to the array to start

For i = 0 **To** size

arr(i) = size - i

Next i

End Sub

Private Sub ExcelSort(arr **As** Variant)

' Initialize the Excel objects (required) **Dim** xl **As** **New** Excel.Application

Dim wbk **As** Workbook

Set wbk = xl.Workbooks.Add

Dim sht **As** Worksheet

Set sht = wbk.ActiveSheet

' Copy the array to the Range object

Dim rng **As** Range

Set rng = sht.Range("A1")

Set rng = rng.Resize(UBound(arr, 1), 1) rng.Value =
xl.WorksheetFunction.Transpose(arr)

' Run the worksheet's sort routine on the Range **Dim** MySort **As** Sort


```
Set MySort = sht.Sort
```

```
With MySort
```

```
.SortFields.Clear
```

```
.SortFields.Add rng, xlSortOnValues, xlAscending, xlSortNormal .SetRange  
rng
```

```
.Header = xlNo
```

```
.Apply
```

```
End With
```

```
' Copy the results back to the array CopyRangeToArray rng, arr
```

```
' Clear the objects Set rng = Nothing wbk.Close False xl.Quit
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub CopyRangeToArray(rng As Range, arr)
```

```
Dim i As Long Dim c As Range
```

```
' Can't just set the array to Range.value (adds a dimension)
```

```
For Each c In rng.Cells
```

```
arr(i) = c.Value
```

```
i = i + 1
```

```
Next c
```

```
End Sub
```

Chapter 23: Flow control structures

Section 23.1: For loop

The **For** loop is used to repeat the enclosed section of code a given number of times. The following simple example illustrates the basic syntax:

```
Dim i as Integer 'Declaration of i
```

```
For i = 1 to 10 'Declare how many times the loop shall be executed
```

```
Debug.Print i 'The piece of code which is repeated
```

```
Next i 'The end of the loop
```

The code above declares an Integer i. The **For** loop assigns every value between 1 and 10 to i and then executes Debug.Print i - i.e. the code prints

the numbers 1 through 10 to the immediate window. Note that the loop variable is incremented by the **Next** statement, that is after the enclosed code executes as opposed to before it executes.

By default, the counter will be incremented by 1 each time the loop executes. However, a **Step** can be specified to change the amount of the increment as either a literal or the return value of a function. If the starting value, ending value, or **Step** value is a floating point number, it will be rounded to the nearest integer value. **Step** can be either a positive or negative value.

```
Dim i As Integer
For i = 1 To 10 Step 2
Debug.Print i 'Prints 1, 3, 5, 7, and 9 Next
```

In general a **For** loop would be used in situations where it is known before the loop starts how many times to execute the enclosed code (otherwise a Do or **While** loop may be more appropriate). This is because the exit condition is fixed after the first entry into loop, as this code demonstrates:

```
Private Iterations As Long 'Module scope
```

```
Public Sub Example()
Dim i As Long
Iterations = 10
For i = 1 To Iterations
```

```
Debug.Print Iterations 'Prints 10 through 1, descending. Iterations =
Iterations 1
Next
End Sub
```

A **For** loop can be exited early with the **Exit For** statement:

```
Dim i As Integer
For i = 1 To 10
If i > 5 Then

Exit For
End If
Debug.Print i 'Prints 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 before loop exits early.
```

Next

Section 23.2: Select Case

SELECT CASE can be used when many different conditions are possible. The conditions are checked from top to bottom and only the first case that match will be executed.

```
Sub TestCase()
```

```
Dim MyVar As String
```

```
Select Case MyVar 'We Select the Variable MyVar to Work with Case  
"Hello" 'Now we simply check the cases we want to check
```

```
MsgBox "This Case"
```

```
Case "World"
```

```
MsgBox "Important"
```

```
Case "How"
```

```
MsgBox "Stuff"
```

```
Case "Are"
```

```
MsgBox "I'm running out of ideas"
```

```
Case "You?", "Today" 'You can separate several conditions with a comma
```

```
MsgBox "Uuum..." 'if any is matched it will go into the case Case Else 'If  
none of the other cases is hit
```

```
MsgBox "All of the other cases failed"
```

```
End Select
```

```
Dim i As Integer
```

```
Select Case i
```

```
Case Is > 2 'Is" can be used instead of the variable in conditions. MsgBox "i  
is greater than 2"
```

```
'Case 2 < Is "'Is" can only be used at the beginning of the condition.
```

```
'Case Else is optional
```

```
End Select
```

```
End Sub
```

The logic of the **SELECT CASE** block can be inverted to support testing of different variables too, in this kind of scenario we can also use logical

operators:

```
Dim x As Integer Dim y As Integer
```

```
x = 2 y = 5
```

```
Select Case True
```

```
Case x > 3
```

```
MsgBox "x is greater than 3" Case y < 2
```

```
MsgBox "y is less than 2" Case x = 1
```

```
MsgBox "x is equal to 1"
```

```
Case x = 2 Xor y = 3
```

```
MsgBox "Go read about ""Xor"" Case Not y = 5
```

```
MsgBox "y is not 5"
```

```
Case x = 3 Or x = 10
```

```
MsgBox "x = 3 or 10"
```

```
Case y < 10 And x < 10
```

```
MsgBox "x and y are less than 10" Case Else
```

```
MsgBox "No match found"
```

```
End Select
```

Case statements can also use arithmetic operators. Where an arithmetic operator is being used against the **SELECT CASE** value it should be preceded with the Is keyword:

```
Dim x As Integer
```

```
x = 5
```

```
Select Case x
```

```
Case 1
```

```
MsgBox "x equals 1"
```

```
Case 2, 3, 4
```

```
MsgBox "x is 2, 3 or 4"
```

```
Case 7 To 10
```

```
MsgBox "x is between 7 and 10 (inclusive)" Case Is < 2
```

```
MsgBox "x is less than one"
```

```
Case Is >= 7
```

```
MsgBox "x is greater than or equal to 7" Case Else
```

```
MsgBox "no match found"
```

```
End Select
```

Section 23.3: For Each loop

The **For Each** loop construct is ideal for iterating all elements of a collection.

```
Public Sub IterateCollection(ByVal items As Collection)
```

```
'For Each iterator must always be variant
```

```
Dim element As Variant
```

```
For Each element In items
```

```
'assumes element can be converted to a string Debug.Print element
```

```
Next
```

```
End Sub
```

Use **For Each** when iterating object collections:

```
Dim sheet As Worksheet
```

```
For Each sheet In ActiveWorkbook.Worksheets Debug.Print sheet.Name
```

```
Next
```

Avoid **For Each** when iterating arrays; a **For** loop will offer significantly better performance with arrays. Conversely, a **For Each** loop will offer better performance when iterating a Collection.

Syntax

```
For Each [item] In [collection] [statements]
```

```
Next [item]
```

The **Next** keyword may optionally be followed by the iterator variable; this can help clarify nested loops, although there are better ways to clarify nested code, such as extracting the inner loop into its own procedure.

```
Dim book As Workbook
```

```
For Each book In Application.Workbooks Debug.Print book.FullName
```

```
Dim sheet As Worksheet
```

```
For Each sheet In ActiveWorkbook.Worksheets Debug.Print sheet.Name
```

```
Next sheet
```

```
Next book
```

Section 23.4: Do loop

```
Public Sub DoLoop()
```

Dim entry **As** String

entry = ""

'Equivalent to a While loop will ask for strings until "Stop" in given 'Prefer using a While loop instead of this form of Do loop **Do While** entry <> "Stop"

entry = InputBox("Enter a string, Stop to end")

Debug.Print entry

Loop

'Equivalent to the above loop, but the condition is only checked AFTER the 'first iteration of the loop, so it will execute even at least once even 'if entry is equal to "Stop" before entering the loop (like in this case) **Do**

entry = InputBox("Enter a string, Stop to end") Debug.Print entry

Loop While entry <> "Stop"

'Equivalent to writing Do While Not entry="Stop" '

'Because the Until is at the top of the loop, it will 'not execute because entry is still equal to "Stop" 'when evaluating the condition

Do Until entry = "Stop"

entry = InputBox("Enter a string, Stop to end") Debug.Print entry

Loop

'Equivalent to writing Do ... Loop While Not i >= 100

Do

entry = InputBox("Enter a string, Stop to end") Debug.Print entry

Loop Until entry = "Stop"

End Sub

Section 23.5: While loop

'Will return whether an element is present in the array

Public Function IsInArray(values() **As** String, **ByVal** whatToFind **As** String) **As** Boolean **Dim** i **As** Integer

i = 0

```
While i < UBound(values) And values(i) <> whatToFind i = i + 1  
Wend
```

```
IsInArray = values(i) = whatToFind End Function
```

Chapter 24: Passing Arguments ByRef or ByVal

The **ByRef** and **ByVal** modifiers are part of a procedure's signature and indicate how an argument is passed to a procedure. In VBA a parameter is passed **ByRef** unless specified otherwise (i.e. **ByRef** is implicit if absent).

Note In many other programming languages (including VB.NET), parameters are implicitly passed by value if no modifier is specified: consider specifying **ByRef** modifiers explicitly to avoid possible confusion.

Section 24.1: Passing Simple Variables ByRef And ByVal

Passing **ByRef** or **ByVal** indicates whether the actual value of an argument is passed to the CalledProcedure by the CallingProcedure, or whether a reference (called a pointer in some other languages) is passed to the CalledProcedure.

If an argument is passed **ByRef**, the memory address of the argument is passed to the CalledProcedure and any modification to that parameter by the CalledProcedure is made to the value in the CallingProcedure.

If an argument is passed **ByVal**, the actual value, not a reference to the variable, is passed to the CalledProcedure.

A simple example will illustrate this clearly:

```
Sub CalledProcedure(ByRef X As Long, ByVal Y As Long)  
X = 321  
Y = 654  
End Sub
```

```
Sub CallingProcedure()  
Dim A As Long  
Dim B As Long  
A = 123
```

B = 456

Debug.Print "BEFORE CALL => A: " & CStr(A), "B: " & CStr(B)

"Result : BEFORE CALL => A: 123 B: 456"

CalledProcedure X:=A, Y:=B

Debug.Print "AFTER CALL = A: " & CStr(A), "B: " & CStr(B)

"Result : AFTER CALL => A: 321 B: 456"

End Sub

Another example:

Sub Main()

Dim IntVarByVal **As** Integer **Dim** IntVarByRef **As** Integer

IntVarByVal = 5 IntVarByRef = 10

SubChangeArguments IntVarByVal, IntVarByRef *'5 goes in as a "copy". 10 goes in as a reference* Debug.Print "IntVarByVal: " & IntVarByVal *'prints 5 (no change made by SubChangeArguments)* Debug.Print "IntVarByRef: " & IntVarByRef *'prints 99 (the variable was changed in*

SubChangeArguments)

End Sub

Sub SubChangeArguments(**ByVal** ParameterByVal **As** Integer, **ByRef** ParameterByRef **As** Integer) ParameterByVal = ParameterByVal + 2 *'5 + 2 = 7 (changed only inside this Sub)* ParameterByRef = ParameterByRef + 89 *' 10 + 89 = 99 (changes the IntVarByRef itself - in the*

Main Sub)

End Sub

Section 24.2: ByRef

Default modifier

If no modifier is specified for a parameter, that parameter is implicitly passed by reference.

Public Sub DoSomething1(foo **As** Long) **End Sub**

Public Sub DoSomething2(**ByRef** foo **As** Long) **End Sub**

The foo parameter is passed **ByRef** in both DoSomething1 and DoSomething2.

Watch out! If you're coming to VBA with experience from other languages, this is very likely the exact opposite behavior to the one you're used to. In many other programming languages (including VB.NET), the implicit/default modifier passes parameters by value.

Passing by reference

When a *value* is passed **ByRef**, the procedure receives **a reference** to the value.

```
Public Sub Test() Dim foo As Long foo = 42  
DoSomething foo Debug.Print foo
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByRef foo As Long) foo = foo * 2  
End Sub
```

Calling the above Test procedure outputs 84. DoSomething is given foo and receives a *reference* to the value, and therefore works with the same memory address as the caller.

When a *reference* is passed **ByRef**, the procedure receives **a reference** to the pointer.

```
Public Sub Test()  
Dim foo As Collection Set foo = New Collection DoSomething foo  
Debug.Print foo.Count
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByRef foo As Collection) foo.Add 42  
Set foo = Nothing End Sub
```

The above code raises run-time error 91, because the caller is calling the Count member of an object that no longer exists, because DoSomething was given a *reference* to the object pointer and assigned it to **Nothing** before returning.

Forcing ByVal at call site

Using parentheses at the call site, you can override **ByRef** and force an argument to be passed **ByVal**:

```
Public Sub Test() Dim foo As Long foo = 42  
DoSomething (foo) Debug.Print foo
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByRef foo As Long) foo = foo * 2  
End Sub
```

The above code outputs 42, regardless of whether **ByRef** is specified implicitly or explicitly.

Watch out! Because of this, using extraneous parentheses in procedure calls can easily introduce bugs. Pay attention to the whitespace between the procedure name and the argument list:

bar = DoSomething(foo) *'function call, no whitespace; parens are part of args list*
DoSomething (foo) *'procedure call, notice whitespace; parens are NOT part of args list*
DoSomething foo *'procedure call does not force the foo parameter to be ByVal*

Section 24.3: ByVal

Passing by value

When a *value* is passed **ByVal**, the procedure receives **a copy** of the value.

```
Public Sub Test() Dim foo As Long foo = 42  
DoSomething foo Debug.Print foo
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByVal foo As Long) foo = foo * 2  
End Sub
```

Calling the above Test procedure outputs 42. DoSomething is given foo and receives **a copy** of the value. The copy is multiplied by 2, and then discarded

when the procedure exits; the caller's copy was never altered. When a *reference* is passed **ByVal**, the procedure receives a **copy** of the pointer.

```
Public Sub Test()  
Dim foo As Collection Set foo = New Collection DoSomething foo  
Debug.Print foo.Count
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByVal foo As Collection) foo.Add 42  
Set foo = Nothing
```

```
End Sub
```

Calling the above Test procedure outputs 1. DoSomething is given foo and receives a *copy* of **the pointer** to the Collection object. Because the foo object variable in the Test scope points to the same object, adding an item in DoSomething adds the item to the same object. Because it's a *copy* of the pointer, setting its reference to **Nothing** does not affect the caller's own copy.

Chapter 25: Scripting.FileSystemObject

Section 25.1: Retrieve only the path from a file path

The GetParentFolderName method returns the parent folder for any path. While this can also be used with folders, it is arguably more useful for extracting the path from an absolute file path:

```
Dim fso As New Scripting.FileSystemObject  
Debug.Print fso.GetParentFolderName("C:\Users\Me\My  
Documents\SomeFile.txt")  
Prints
```

C:\Users\Me\My Documents

Note that the trailing path separator is not included in the returned string.

Section 25.2: Retrieve just the extension from a file name

```
Dim fso As New Scripting.FileSystemObject
```

Debug.Print fso.GetExtensionName("MyFile.something.txt")
Prints txt Note that the GetExtensionName() method already handles multiple periods in a file name.

Section 25.3: Recursively enumerate folders and files

Early Bound (with a reference to Microsoft Scripting Runtime)

```
Sub EnumerateFilesAndFolders( _  
    FolderPath As String, _  
    Optional MaxDepth As Long = 1, _  
    Optional CurrentDepth As Long = 0, _  
    Optional Indentation As Long = 2)
```

```
Dim FSO As Scripting.FileSystemObject  
Set FSO = New Scripting.FileSystemObject
```

'Check the folder exists

```
If FSO.FolderExists(FolderPath) Then  
    Dim fldr As Scripting.Folder
```

```
    Set fldr = FSO.GetFolder(FolderPath)
```

'Output the starting directory path

```
    If CurrentDepth = 0 Then
```

```
        Debug.Print fldr.Path
```

```
    End If
```

'Enumerate the subfolders

```
    Dim subFldr As Scripting.Folder
```

```
    For Each subFldr In fldr.SubFolders
```

```
        Debug.Print Space$((CurrentDepth + 1) * Indentation) & subFldr.Name If  
        CurrentDepth < MaxDepth Or MaxDepth = 1 Then
```

'Recursively call EnumerateFilesAndFolders

```
        EnumerateFilesAndFolders subFldr.Path, MaxDepth, CurrentDepth + 1,  
        Indentation End If
```

```
    Next subFldr
```

Enumerate the files

Dim fil **As** Scripting.File

For Each fil **In** fldr.Files

Debug.Print Space\$((CurrentDepth + 1) * Indentation) & fil.Name **Next** fil

End If

End Sub

Output when called with arguments like: EnumerateFilesAndFolders

"C:\Test"

C:\Test

Documents

Personal

Budget.xls Recipes.doc

Work

Planning.doc

Downloads

FooBar.exe

ReadMe.txt

Output when called with arguments like: EnumerateFilesAndFolders

"C:\Test", 0

C:\Test

Documents Downloads ReadMe.txt

Output when called with arguments like: EnumerateFilesAndFolders

"C:\Test", 1, 4

C:\Test

Documents

Personal Work

Downloads

FooBar.exe

ReadMe.txt

Section 25.4: Strip file extension from a file name

```
Dim fso As New Scripting.FileSystemObject
Debug.Print fso.GetBaseName("MyFile.something.txt")
Prints MyFile.something Note that the GetBaseName() method already
handles multiple periods in a file name.
```

Section 25.5: Enumerate files in a directory using FileSystemObject

Early bound (requires a reference to Microsoft Scripting Runtime):

```
Public Sub EnumerateDirectory()
Dim fso As Scripting.FileSystemObject
Set fso = New Scripting.FileSystemObject

Dim targetFolder As Folder
Set targetFolder = fso.GetFolder("C:\")
Dim foundFile As Variant
For Each foundFile In targetFolder.Files Debug.Print foundFile.Name
Next
End Sub

Late bound:
```

```
Public Sub EnumerateDirectory()
Dim fso As Object
Set fso = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")

Dim targetFolder As Object
Set targetFolder = fso.GetFolder("C:\")
Dim foundFile As Variant
For Each foundFile In targetFolder.Files Debug.Print foundFile.Name
Next
End Sub
```

Section 25.6: Creating a FileSystemObject

```

Const ForReading = 1
Const ForWriting = 2
Const ForAppending = 8

Sub FsoExample()
Dim fso As Object ' declare variable
Set fso = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject") ' Set it to be a File
System Object

' now use it to check if a file exists Dim myFilePath As String
myFilePath = "C:\mypath\to\myfile.txt" If fso.FileExists(myFilePath) Then

' do something

Else
' file doesn't exist
MsgBox "File doesn't exist"

End If
End Sub

```

Section 25.7: Reading a text file using a FileSystemObject

```

Const ForReading = 1
Const ForWriting = 2
Const ForAppending = 8

Sub ReadTextFileExample()
Dim fso As Object
Set fso = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")

Dim sourceFile As Object
Dim myFilePath As String
Dim myFileText As String

myFilePath = "C:\mypath\to\myfile.txt"

Set sourceFile = fso.OpenTextFile(myFilePath, ForReading)

```

```
myFileText = sourceFile.ReadAll ' myFileText now contains the content of
the text file sourceFile.Close ' close the file
' do whatever you might need to do with the text
```

```
' You can also read it line by line
```

```
Dim line As String
```

```
Set sourceFile = fso.OpenTextFile(myFilePath, ForReading)
```

```
While Not sourceFile.AtEndOfStream ' while we are not finished reading
through the file
```

```
line = sourceFile.ReadLine
```

```
' do something with the line...
```

```
Wend
```

```
sourceFile.Close
```

```
End Sub
```

Section 25.8: Creating a text file with FileSystemObject

```
Sub CreateTextFileExample()
```

```
Dim fso As Object
```

```
Set fso = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
```

```
Dim targetFile As Object
```

```
Dim myFilePath As String
```

```
Dim myFileText As String
```

```
myFilePath = "C:\mypath\to\myfile.txt"
```

```
Set targetFile = fso.CreateTextFile(myFilePath, True) ' this will overwrite
any existing file targetFile.Write "This is some new text"
```

```
targetFile.Write " And this text will appear right after the first bit of text."
```

```
targetFile.WriteLine "This bit of text includes a newline character to ensure
each write takes
```

```
its own line."
```

```
targetFile.Close ' close the file
```

```
End Sub
```


Section 25.9: Using FSO.BuildPath to build a Full Path from folder path and file name

If you're accepting user input for folder paths, you might need to check for trailing backslashes (\) before building a file path. The FSO.BuildPath method makes this simpler:

```
Const sourceFilePath As String = "C:\Temp" '<-- Without trailing backslash  
Const targetFilePath As String = "C:\Temp\" '<-- With trailing backslash  
Const fileName As String = "Results.txt"  
Dim FSO As FileSystemObject Set FSO = New FileSystemObject  
Debug.Print FSO.BuildPath(sourceFilePath, fileName) Debug.Print  
FSO.BuildPath(targetFilePath, fileName)
```

Output:

C:\Temp\Results.txt C:\Temp\Results.txt

Section 25.10: Writing to an existing file with FileSystemObject

```
Const ForReading = 1  
Const ForWriting = 2  
Const ForAppending = 8
```

```
Sub WriteTextFileExample()  
Dim oFso  
Set oFso = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
```

```
Dim oFile as Object  
Dim myFilePath as String Dim myFileText as String
```

```
myFilePath = "C:\mypath\to\myfile.txt"
```

```
' First check if the file exists
```

```
If oFso.FileExists(myFilePath) Then
```

```
' this will overwrite any existing filecontent with whatever you send the file '  
to append data to the end of an existing file, use ForAppending instead Set  
oFile = oFso.OpenTextFile(myFilePath, ForWriting)
```

```
Else
```

' create the file instead

Set oFile = oFso.CreateTextFile(myFilePath) *' skipping the optional boolean for overwrite if*

exists as we already checked that the file doesn't exist.

End If

oFile.Write "This is some new text"

oFile.Write " And this text will appear right after the first bit of text."

oFile.WriteLine "This bit of text includes a newline character to ensure each write takes its

own line."

oFile.Close *' close the file*

Chapter 26: Working With Files and Directories Without Using FileSystemObject

Section 26.1: Determining If Folders and Files Exist

Files:

To determine if a file exists, simply pass the filename to the Dir\$ function and test to see if it returns a result. Note that Dir\$ supports wild-cards, so to test for a *specific* file, the passed pathName should be tested to ensure that it does not contain them. The sample below raises an error - if this isn't the desired behavior, the function can be changed to simply return **False**.

Public Function FileExists(pathName **As String**) **As Boolean**

If InStr(1, pathName, "*") **Or** InStr(1, pathName, "?") **Then**

'Exit Function 'Return False on wild-cards.

Err.Raise 52 *'Raise error on wild-cards.*

End If

FileExists = Dir\$(pathName) <> vbNullString

End Function

Folders (Dir\$ method):

The Dir\$() function can also be used to determine if a folder exists by

specifying passing vbDirectory for the optional attributes parameter. In this case, the passed pathName value must end with a path separator (\), as matching *filenames* will cause false positives. Keep in mind that wild-cards are only allowed after the last path separator, so the example function below will throw a run-time error 52 - "Bad file name or number" if the input contains a wild-card. If this isn't the desired behavior, uncomment **On Error Resume Next** at the top of the function. Also remember that Dir\$ supports relative file paths (i.e. ..\Foo\Bar), so results are only guaranteed to be valid as long as the current working directory is not changed.

```
Public Function FolderExists(ByVal pathName As String) As Boolean
'Uncomment the "On Error" line if paths with wild-cards should return False
'instead of raising an error.
'On Error Resume Next
If pathName = vbNullString Or Right$(pathName, 1) <> "\" Then
```

```
Exit Function
```

```
End If
```

```
FolderExists = Dir$(pathName, vbDirectory) <> vbNullString
```

```
End Function
```

Folders (ChDir method):

The ChDir statement can also be used to test if a folder exists. Note that this method will temporarily change the environment that VBA is running in, so if that is a consideration, the Dir\$ method should be used instead. It does have the advantage of being much less forgiving with its parameter. This method also supports relative file paths, so has the same caveat as the Dir\$ method.

```
Public Function FolderExists(ByVal pathName As String) As Boolean
'Cache the current working directory
Dim cached As String
cached = CurDir$
```

```
On Error Resume Next
```

```
ChDir pathName
```

FolderExists = Err.Number = 0

On Error GoTo 0

'Change back to the cached working directory. ChDir cached

End Function

Section 26.2: Creating and Deleting File Folders

NOTE: For brevity, the examples below use the FolderExists function from the **Determining If Folders and Files Exist** example in this topic.

The Mkdir statement can be used to create a new folder. It accepts paths containing drive letters (C:\Foo), UNC names (\\Server\Foo), relative paths (..\Foo), or the current working directory (Foo).

If the drive or UNC name is omitted (i.e. \Foo), the folder is created on the current drive. This may or may not be the same drive as the current working directory.

Public Sub MakeNewDirectory(**ByVal** pathName **As String**)

'Mkdir will fail if the directory already exists.

If FolderExists(pathName) **Then Exit Sub**

'This may still fail due to permissions, etc.

Mkdir pathName

End Sub

The Rmdir statement can be used to delete existing folders. It accepts paths in the same forms as Mkdir and uses the same relationship to the current working directory and drive. Note that the statement is similar to the Windows rd shell command, so will throw a run-time error 75: "Path/File access error" if the target directory is not empty.

Public Sub DeleteDirectory(**ByVal** pathName **As String**)

If Right\$(pathName, 1) <> "\" **Then**

pathName = pathName & "\"

End If

'Rmdir will fail if the directory doesn't exist.

If Not FolderExists(pathName) **Then Exit Sub**

'Rmdir will fail if the directory contains files.

If Dir\$(pathName & "*") <> vbNullString **Then Exit Sub**

'Rmdir will fail if the directory contains directories. **Dim** subDir **As** String

subDir = Dir\$(pathName & "*", vbDirectory)

Do

If subDir <> "." **And** subDir <> ".." **Then Exit Sub** subDir = Dir\$(, vbDirectory)

Loop While subDir <> vbNullString

'This may still fail due to permissions, etc. Rmdir pathName

Chapter 27: Reading 2GB+ files in binary in VBA and File Hashes

There is a built in easy way to read files in binary within VBA, however it has a restriction of 2GB (2,147,483,647 bytes - max of Long data type). As technology evolves, this 2GB limit is easily breached. e.g. an ISO image of Operating System install DVD disc. Microsoft does provide a way to overcome this via low level Windows API and here is a backup of it.

Also demonstrate (Read part) for calculating File Hashes without external program like fciv.exe from Microsoft.

Section 27.1: This have to be in a Class module, examples later referred as "Random"

' How To Seek Past VBA's 2GB File Limit

' Source: <https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/189981> (Archived)

' This must be in a Class Module

Option Explicit

Public Enum W32F_Errors

W32F_UNKNOWN_ERROR = 45600

W32F_FILE_ALREADY_OPEN

W32F_PROBLEM_OPENING_FILE

W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED
W32F_Problem_seeking

End Enum

Private Const W32F_SOURCE = "Win32File Object"

Private Const GENERIC_WRITE = &H40000000

Private Const GENERIC_READ = &H80000000

Private Const FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL = &H80

Private Const CREATE_ALWAYS = 2

Private Const OPEN_ALWAYS = 4

Private Const INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE = 1

Private Const FILE_BEGIN = 0, FILE_CURRENT = 1, FILE_END = 2

Private Const FORMAT_MESSAGE_FROM_SYSTEM = &H1000

Private Declare Function FormatMessage **Lib** "kernel32" **Alias**

"FormatMessageA" (_ **ByVal** dwFlags **As** Long, _

lpSource **As** Long, _

ByVal dwMessageId **As** Long, _

ByVal dwLanguageId **As** Long, _

ByVal lpBuffer **As** String, _

ByVal nSize **As** Long, _

Arguments **As** Any) **As** Long

Private Declare Function ReadFile **Lib** "kernel32" (_

ByVal hFile **As** Long, _

lpBuffer **As** Any, _

ByVal nNumberOfBytesToRead **As** Long, _

lpNumberOfBytesRead **As** Long, _

ByVal lpOverlapped **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function CloseHandle **Lib** "kernel32" (**ByVal** hObject **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function WriteFile **Lib** "kernel32" (_

ByVal hFile **As** Long, _

lpBuffer **As** Any, _

ByVal nNumberOfBytesToWrite **As Long**, _ lpNumberOfBytesWritten **As Long**, _ **ByVal** lpOverlapped **As Long**) **As Long**

Private Declare Function CreateFile **Lib** "kernel32" **Alias** "CreateFileA" (_
ByVal lpFileName **As String**, _
ByVal dwDesiredAccess **As Long**, _
ByVal dwShareMode **As Long**, _
ByVal lpSecurityAttributes **As Long**, _
ByVal dwCreationDisposition **As Long**, _
ByVal dwFlagsAndAttributes **As Long**, _
ByVal hTemplateFile **As Long**) **As Long**

Private Declare Function SetFilePointer **Lib** "kernel32" (_ **ByVal** hFile **As Long**, _
ByVal lDistanceToMove **As Long**, _
lpDistanceToMoveHigh **As Long**, _
ByVal dwMoveMethod **As Long**) **As Long**

Private Declare Function FlushFileBuffers **Lib** "kernel32" (**ByVal** hFile **As Long**) **As Long**

Private hFile **As Long**, sFName **As String**, fAutoFlush **As Boolean**

Public Property Get FileHandle() **As Long** **If** hFile =
INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED **End If**
FileHandle = hFile

End Property

Public Property Get FileName() **As String** **If** hFile =
INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED **End If**
FileName = sFName

End Property

Public Property Get IsOpen() **As Boolean** IsOpen = hFile <>
INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE

End Property

Public Property Get AutoFlush() **As** Boolean **If** hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED **End If**
AutoFlush = fAutoFlush

End Property

Public Property Let AutoFlush(**ByVal** NewVal **As** Boolean) **If** hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED
End If
fAutoFlush = NewVal

End Property

Public Sub OpenFile(**ByVal** sFileName **As** String)
If hFile <> INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_OPEN, sFName
End If
hFile = CreateFile(sFileName, GENERIC_WRITE **Or** GENERIC_READ, 0,
0, OPEN_ALWAYS, FILE_ATTRIBUTE_NORMAL, 0)

If hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**
RaiseError W32F_PROBLEM_OPENING_FILE, sFileName
End If
sFName = sFileName
End Sub

Public Sub CloseFile()
If hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED **End If**
CloseHandle hFile
sFName = ""
fAutoFlush = **False**

hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE

End Sub

Public Function ReadBytes(**ByVal** ByteCount **As Long**) **As Variant** **Dim**
BytesRead **As Long**, Bytes() **As Byte**
If hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED

End If

ReDim Bytes(**0 To** ByteCount **1**) **As Byte**

ReadFile hFile, Bytes(**0**), ByteCount, BytesRead, **0** ReadBytes = Bytes

End Function

Public Sub WriteBytes(DataBytes() **As Byte**)

Dim fSuccess **As Long**, BytesToWrite **As Long**, BytesWritten **As Long**

If hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED

End If

BytesToWrite = **UBound**(DataBytes) **LBound**(DataBytes) + **1**

fSuccess = WriteFile(hFile, DataBytes(**LBound**(DataBytes))), BytesToWrite,
BytesWritten, **0**) **If** fAutoFlush **Then** Flush

End Sub

Public Sub Flush()

If hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED **End If**

FlushFileBuffers hFile

End Sub

Public Sub SeekAbsolute(**ByVal** HighPos **As Long**, **ByVal** LowPos **As Long**) **If** hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED

End If

LowPos = SetFilePointer(hFile, LowPos, HighPos, FILE_BEGIN)

End Sub

Public Sub SeekRelative(**ByVal** Offset **As** Long)

Dim TempLow **As** Long, TempErr **As** Long

If hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then**

RaiseError W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED

End If

TempLow = SetFilePointer(hFile, Offset, **ByVal** 0&, FILE_CURRENT)

If TempLow = 1 **Then**

TempErr = Err.LastDllError

If TempErr **Then**

RaiseError W32F_Problem_seeking, "Error " & TempErr & "." & vbCrLf &

CStr(TempErr) **End If**

End If End Sub

Private Sub Class_Initialize() hFile = INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE

End Sub

Private Sub Class_Terminate()

If hFile <> INVALID_HANDLE_VALUE **Then** CloseHandle hFile

End Sub

Private Sub RaiseError(**ByVal** ErrorCode **As** W32F_Errors, **Optional** sExtra)

Dim Win32Err **As** Long, Win32Text **As** String

Win32Err = Err.LastDllError

If Win32Err **Then**

Win32Text = vbCrLf & "Error " & Win32Err & vbCrLf & _

DecodeAPIErrors(Win32Err)

End If

Select Case ErrorCode

Case W32F_FILE_ALREADY_OPEN

Err.Raise W32F_FILE_ALREADY_OPEN, W32F_SOURCE, "The file " &

```

sExtra & " is already open." & Win32Text
Case W32F_PROBLEM_OPENING_FILE
Err.Raise W32F_PROBLEM_OPENING_FILE, W32F_SOURCE, "Error
opening " & sExtra & "." & Win32Text
Case W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED
Err.Raise W32F_FILE_ALREADY_CLOSED, W32F_SOURCE, "There is
no open file."
Case W32F_Problem_seeking
Err.Raise W32F_Problem_seeking, W32F_SOURCE, "Seek Error." &
vbCrLf & sExtra
Case Else
Err.Raise W32F_UNKNOWN_ERROR, W32F_SOURCE, "Unknown
error." & Win32Text End Select
End Sub

```

```

Private Function DecodeAPIErrors(ByVal ErrorCode As Long) As String
Dim sMessage As String, MessageLength As Long
sMessage = Space$(256)
MessageLength =
FormatMessage(FORMAT_MESSAGE_FROM_SYSTEM, 0&, ErrorCode,
0&, sMessage, 256&,
0&)
If MessageLength > 0 Then

DecodeAPIErrors = Left(sMessage, MessageLength) Else
DecodeAPIErrors = "Unknown Error."
End If
End Function

```

Section 27.2: Code for Calculating File Hash in a Standard module

```

Private Const HashTypeMD5 As String = "MD5" '
https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-
us/library/system.security.cryptography.md5cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.1
10\).aspx

```

Private Const HashTypeSHA1 **As** String = "SHA1" '
[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha1cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha1cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private Const HashTypeSHA256 **As** String = "SHA256" '
[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha256cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha256cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private Const HashTypeSHA384 **As** String = "SHA384" '
[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha384cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha384cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private Const HashTypeSHA512 **As** String = "SHA512" '
[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha512cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha512cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private uFileSize **As** Double ' *Comment out if not testing performance by FileHashes()*

Sub FileHashes()

Dim tStart **As** Date, tFinish **As** Date, sHash **As** String, aTestFiles **As** Variant, oTestFile **As**

Variant, aBlockSizes **As** Variant, oBlockSize **As** Variant

Dim BLOCKSIZE **As** Double

' This performs performance testing on different file sizes and block sizes

aBlockSizes = Array("2^12-1", "2^13-1", "2^14-1", "2^15-1", "2^16-1", "2^17-1", "2^18-1",

"2^19-1", "2^20-1", "2^21-1", "2^22-1", "2^23-1", "2^24-1", "2^25-1", "2^26-1")

aTestFiles = Array("C:\ISO\clonezilla-live-2.2.2-37-amd64.iso",

"C:\ISO\HPIP201.2014_0902.29.iso",

"C:\ISO\SW_DVD5_Windows_Vista_Business_W32_32BIT_English.ISO",

"C:\ISO\Win10_1607_English_x64.iso",

"C:\ISO\SW_DVD9_Windows_Svr_Std_and_DataCtr_2012_R2_64Bit_Engl

```

Debug.Print "Test files: " & Join(aTestFiles, " | ")
Debug.Print "BlockSizes: " & Join(aBlockSizes, " | ")
For Each oTestFile In aTestFiles
Debug.Print oTestFile
For Each oBlockSize In aBlockSizes
BLOCKSIZE = Evaluate(oBlockSize)
tStart = Now
sHash = GetFileHash(CStr(oTestFile), BLOCKSIZE, HashTypeMD5)
tFinish = Now
Debug.Print sHash, uFileSize, Format(tFinish - tStart, "hh:mm:ss"),
oBlockSize & " (" &
BLOCKSIZE & ")"
Next
Next
End Sub

```

```

Private Function GetFileHash(ByVal sFile As String, ByVal uBlockSize As
Double, ByVal sHashType As String) As String
Dim oFSO As Object ' "Scripting.FileSystemObject"
Dim oCSP As Object ' One of the "CryptoServiceProvider"
Dim oRnd As Random ' "Random" Class by Microsoft, must be in the same
file
Dim uBytesRead As Double, uBytesToRead As Double, bDone As Boolean
Dim aBlock() As Byte, aBytes As Variant ' Arrays to store bytes
Dim aHash() As Byte, sHash As String, i As Long
'Dim uFileSize As Double ' Un-Comment if GetFileHash() is to be used
individually

```

```

Set oRnd = New Random ' Class by Microsoft: Random
Set oFSO = CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
Set oCSP = CreateObject("System.Security.Cryptography." & sHashType &
"CryptoServiceProvider")

```

```

If oFSO Is Nothing Or oRnd Is Nothing Or oCSP Is Nothing Then
MsgBox "One or more required objects cannot be created" GoTo CleanUp

```

```

End If

```

```

uFileSize = oFSO.GetFile(sFile).Size ' FILELEN() has 2GB max!
uBytesRead = 0
bDone = False
sHash = String(oCSP.HashSize / 4, "0") ' Each hexadecimal has 4 bits

Application.ScreenUpdating = False
' Process the file in chunks of uBlockSize or less If uFileSize = 0 Then

ReDim aBlock(0)
oCSP.TransformFinalBlock aBlock, 0, 0 bDone = True

Else
With oRnd
.OpenFile sFile Do

If uBytesRead + uBlockSize < uFileSize Then uBytesToRead = uBlockSize
Else
uBytesToRead = uFileSize - uBytesRead
bDone = True
End If
' Read in some bytes
aBytes = .ReadBytes(uBytesToRead)
aBlock = aBytes
If bDone Then
oCSP.TransformFinalBlock aBlock, 0, uBytesToRead uBytesRead =
uBytesRead + uBytesToRead
Else
uBytesRead = uBytesRead + oCSP.TransformBlock(aBlock, 0,
uBytesToRead, aBlock, 0)
End If
DoEvents
Loop Until bDone
.CloseFile
End With
End If
If bDone Then
' convert Hash byte array to an hexadecimal string aHash = oCSP.hash
For i = 0 To UBound(aHash)

```

```

Mid$(sHash, i * 2 + (aHash(i) > 15) + 2) = Hex(aHash(i)) Next
End If
Application.ScreenUpdating = True
' Clean up
oCSP.Clear
Cleanup:
Set oFSO = Nothing
Set oRnd = Nothing
Set oCSP = Nothing
GetFileHash = sHash
End Function

```

The output is pretty interesting, my test files indicates that **BLOCKSIZE = 131071 ($2^{17}-1$)** gives overall best performance with 32bit Office 2010 on Windows 7 x64, next best is $2^{16}-1$ (65535). Note $2^{27}-1$ yields *Out of memory*.

File Size (bytes) File Name

```

146,800,640 clonezilla-live-2.2.2-37-amd64.iso
798,210,048 HPIP201.2014_0902.29.iso
2,073,016,320
SW_DVD5_Windows_Vista_Business_W32_32BIT_English.ISO
4,380,387,328 Win10_1607_English_x64.iso
5,400,115,200
SW_DVD9_Windows_Svr_Std_and_DataCtr_2012_R2_64Bit_English.ISO

```

Section 27.3: Calculating all Files Hash from a root Folder

Another variation from the code above gives you more performance when you want to get hash codes of all files from a root folder including all sub folders.

Example of Worksheet:

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	SHA1	RootPath: C:\					
2	File Hash	File Size	File Name	File Name with path	Last Modified	Time used	Start

Code

Option Explicit

```
Private Const HashTypeMD5 As String = "MD5" '
```

[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.md5cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.md5cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private Const HashTypeSHA1 **As** String = "SHA1" '

[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha1cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha1cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private Const HashTypeSHA256 **As** String = "SHA256" '

[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha256cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha256cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private Const HashTypeSHA384 **As** String = "SHA384" '

[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha384cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha384cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private Const HashTypeSHA512 **As** String = "SHA512" '

[https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha512cryptoserviceprovider\(v=vs.110\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/system.security.cryptography.sha512cryptoserviceprovider(v=vs.110).aspx)

Private Const BLOCKSIZE **As** Double = 131071 ' 2¹⁷-1

Private oFSO **As** Object

Private oCSP **As** Object

Private oRnd **As** Random ' Requires the Class from Microsoft

<https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/189981>

Private sHashType **As** String

Private sRootFDR **As** String

Private oRng **As** Range

Private uFileCount **As** Double

Sub AllFileHashes() ' Active-X button calls this

Dim oWS **As** Worksheet

' | A: FileHash | B: FileSize | C: FileName | D: FileName and Path | E: File Last Modification

Time | F: Time required to calculate has code (seconds)

With ThisWorkbook

' Clear All old entries on all worksheets

For Each oWS **In** .Worksheets

Set oRng = Intersect(oWS.UsedRange, oWS.UsedRange.Offset(2))

If Not oRng **Is Nothing Then** oRng.ClearContents

Next

With .Worksheets(1)

sHashType = Trim(.Range("A1").Value) *' Range(A1)*

sRootFDR = Trim(.Range("C1").Value) *' Range(C1) Column B for file size*

If Len(sHashType) = 0 **Or** Len(sRootFDR) = 0 **Then Exit Sub**

Set oRng = .Range("A3") *' First entry on First Page*

End With

End With

uFileCount = 0

If oRnd **Is Nothing Then Set** oRnd = **New** Random *' Class by Microsoft: Random*

If oFSO **Is Nothing Then Set** oFSO =

CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject") *' Just to get*

correct FileSize

If oCSP **Is Nothing Then Set** oCSP =

CreateObject("System.Security.Cryptography." & sHashType &
"CryptoServiceProvider")

ProcessFolder oFSO.GetFolder(sRootFDR)

Application.StatusBar = **False**

Application.ScreenUpdating = **True**

oCSP.Clear

Set oCSP = **Nothing**

Set oRng = **Nothing**

Set oFSO = **Nothing**

Set oRnd = **Nothing**

Debug.Print "Total file count: " & uFileCount

End Sub

Private Sub ProcessFolder(**ByRef** oFDR **As** Object)

```
Dim oFile As Object, oSubFDR As Object, sHash As String, dStart As Date,  
dFinish As Date Application.ScreenUpdating = False  
For Each oFile In oFDR.Files
```

```
uFileCount = uFileCount + 1  
Application.StatusBar = uFileCount & ": " & Right(oFile.Path, 255 -  
Len(uFileCount) 2) oCSP.Initialize ' Reinitialize the CryptoServiceProvider  
dStart = Now  
sHash = GetFileHash(oFile, BLOCKSIZE, sHashType)  
dFinish = Now  
With oRng
```

```
.Value = sHash  
.Offset(0, 1).Value = oFile.Size ' File Size in bytes  
.Offset(0, 2).Value = oFile.Name ' File name with extension  
.Offset(0, 3).Value = oFile.Path ' Full File name and Path  
.Offset(0, 4).Value = FileDateTime(oFile.Path) ' Last modification timestamp  
of file .Offset(0, 5).Value = dFinish - dStart ' Time required to calculate hash  
code
```

```
End With
```

```
If oRng.Row = Rows.Count Then
```

```
' Max rows reached, start on Next sheet
```

```
If oRng.Worksheet.Index + 1 > ThisWorkbook.Worksheets.Count Then
```

```
MsgBox "All rows in all worksheets have been used, please create more  
sheets" End
```

```
End If
```

```
Set oRng = ThisWorkbook.Sheets(oRng.Worksheet.Index + 1).Range("A3")
```

```
oRng.Worksheet.Activate
```

```
Else
```

```
' Move to next row otherwise Set oRng = oRng.Offset(1)
```

```
End If
```

```
Next
```

```
' Application.StatusBar = False Application.ScreenUpdating = True
```

```
oRng.Activate
```

```
For Each oSubFDR In oFDR.SubFolders
```

```
ProcessFolder oSubFDR
```

Next
End Sub

Private Function GetFileHash(**ByVal** sFile **As** String, **ByVal** uBlockSize **As** Double, **ByVal** sHashType **As** String) **As** String
Dim uBytesRead **As** Double, uBytesToRead **As** Double, bDone **As** Boolean
Dim aBlock() **As** Byte, aBytes **As** Variant *' Arrays to store bytes*
Dim aHash() **As** Byte, sHash **As** String, i **As** Long, oTmp **As** Variant
Dim uFileSize **As** Double *' Un-Comment if GetFileHash() is to be used individually*

If oRnd **Is Nothing** **Then Set** oRnd = **New** Random *' Class by Microsoft: Random*

If oFSO **Is Nothing** **Then Set** oFSO =
CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject") *' Just to get correct FileSize*
If oCSP **Is Nothing** **Then Set** oCSP =
CreateObject("System.Security.Cryptography." & sHashType &
"CryptoServiceProvider")

If oFSO **Is Nothing** **Or** oRnd **Is Nothing** **Or** oCSP **Is Nothing** **Then**
MsgBox "One or more required objects cannot be created" **Exit Function**

End If

uFileSize = oFSO.GetFile(sFile).Size *' FILELEN() has 2GB max* uBytesRead
= 0

bDone = **False**

sHash = String(oCSP.HashSize / 4, "0") *' Each hexadecimal is 4 bits*

' Process the file in chunks of uBlockSize or less

If uFileSize = 0 **Then**

ReDim aBlock(0)

oCSP.TransformFinalBlock aBlock, 0, 0 bDone = **True**

Else

With oRnd

On Error GoTo CannotOpenFile

.OpenFile sFile

Do

If uBytesRead + uBlockSize < uFileSize **Then** uBytesToRead = uBlockSize

Else

uBytesToRead = uFileSize - uBytesRead

bDone = **True**

End If

' Read in some bytes

aBytes = .ReadBytes(uBytesToRead)

aBlock = aBytes

If bDone **Then**

oCSP.TransformFinalBlock aBlock, 0, uBytesToRead uBytesRead =
uBytesRead + uBytesToRead

Else

uBytesRead = uBytesRead + oCSP.TransformBlock(aBlock, 0,
uBytesToRead, aBlock, 0)

End If

DoEvents

Loop Until bDone

.CloseFile

CannotOpenFile:

If Err.Number <> 0 **Then** *' Change the hash code to the Error description*

oTmp = Split(Err.Description, vbCrLf)

sHash = oTmp(1) & ":" & oTmp(2)

End If

End With

End If

If bDone **Then**

' convert Hash byte array to an hexadecimal string

aHash = oCSP.hash

For i = 0 **To** UBound(aHash)

Mid\$(sHash, i * 2 + (aHash(i) > 15) + 2) = Hex(aHash(i)) **Next**

End If

GetFileHash = sHash

End Function

Chapter 28: Creating a procedure

Section 28.1: Introduction to procedures

A **Sub** is a procedure that performs a specific task but does not return a specific value.

```
Sub ProcedureName ([argument_list])  
[statements]  
End Sub
```

If no access modifier is specified, a procedure is **Public** by default.

A **Function** is a procedure that is given data and returns a value, ideally without global or module-scope sideeffects.

```
Function ProcedureName ([argument_list]) [As ReturnType]  
[statements]  
End Function
```

A **Property** is a procedure that *encapsulates* module data. A property can have up to 3 accessors: **Get** to return a value or object reference, **Let** to assign a value, and/or **Set** to assign an object reference.

```
Property Get|Let|Set PropertyName([argument_list]) [As ReturnType]  
[statements]  
End Property
```

Properties are usually used in class modules (although they are allowed in standard modules as well), exposing accessor to data that is otherwise inaccessible to the calling code. A property that only exposes a **Get** accessor is "read-only"; a property that would only expose a **Let** and/or **Set** accessor is "write-only". Write-only properties are not considered a good programming practice - if the client code can *write* a value, it should be able to *read* it back. Consider implementing a **Sub** procedure instead of making a write-only property.

Returning a value

A **Function** or **Property Get** procedure can (and should!) return a value to its caller. This is done by assigning the identifier of the procedure:

```
Property Get Foo() As Integer Foo = 42  
End Property
```

Section 28.2: Function With Examples

As stated above Functions are smaller procedures that contain small pieces of code which may be repetitive inside a Procedure.

Functions are used to reduce redundancy in code.

Similar to a Procedure, A function can be declared with or without an arguments list.

Function is declared as a return type, as all functions return a value. The Name and the Return Variable of a function are the Same.

1. Function With Parameter:

```
Function check_even(i as integer) as boolean if (i mod 2) = 0 then  
check_even = True  
else  
check_even=False  
end if  
end Function
```

2. Function Without Parameter:

```
Function greet() as String greet= "Hello Coder!" end Function
```

The Function can be called in various ways inside a function. Since a Function declared with a return type is basically a variable. it is used similar to a variable.

Functional Calls:

```
call greet() 'Similar to a Procedural call just allows the Procedure to use the  
'variable greet  
string_1=greet() 'The Return value of the function is used for variable  
'assignment
```

Further the function can also be used as conditions for if and other conditional statements.

```
for i = 1 to 10
if check_even(i) then msgbox i & " is Even" else
msgbox i & " is Odd" end if
next i
```

Further more Functions can have modifiers such as By ref and By val for their arguments.

Chapter 29: Procedure Calls

Parameter Info

IdentifierName The name of the procedure to call.

arguments A comma-separated list of arguments to be passed to the procedure.

Section 29.1: This is confusing. Why not just always use parentheses?

Parentheses are used to enclose the arguments of *function calls*. Using them for *procedure calls* can cause unexpected problems.

Because they can introduce bugs, both at run-time by passing a possibly unintended value to the procedure, and at compile-time by simply being invalid syntax.

Run-time

Redundant parentheses can introduce bugs. Given a procedure that takes an object reference as a parameter...

```
Sub DoSomething(ByRef target As Range)
```

```
End Sub
```

...and called with parentheses:

```
DoSomething (Application.ActiveCell) 'raises an error at runtime
```

This will raise an "Object Required" runtime error #424. Other errors are possible in other circumstances: here the Application.ActiveCell Range object reference is being *evaluated* and passed by value **regardless** of the procedure's signature specifying that target would be passed **ByRef**. The actual value passed **ByVal** to DoSomething in the above snippet, is Application.ActiveCell.Value.

Parentheses force VBA to evaluate the value of the bracketed expression, and pass the result **ByVal** to the called procedure. When the type of the evaluated result mismatches the procedure's expected type and cannot be implicitly converted, a runtime error is raised.

Compile-time

This code will fail to compile:

```
MsgBox ("Invalid Code!", vbCritical)
```

Because the expression ("Invalid Code!", vbCritical) cannot be *evaluated* to a value.

This would compile and work:

```
MsgBox ("Invalid Code!"), (vbCritical)
```

But would definitely look silly. Avoid redundant parentheses.

Section 29.2: Implicit Call Syntax

ProcedureName

ProcedureName argument1, argument2

Call a procedure by its name without any parentheses.

Edge case

The **Call** keyword is only required in one edge case:

```
Call DoSomething : DoSomethingElse
```

DoSomething and DoSomethingElse are procedures being called. If the **Call** keyword was removed, then DoSomething would be parsed as a *line label* rather than a procedure call, which would break the code: DoSomething: DoSomethingElse *'only DoSomethingElse will run*

Section 29.3: Optional Arguments

Some procedures have optional arguments. Optional arguments always come after required arguments, but the procedure can be called without them.

For example, if the function, ProcedureName were to have two required arguments (argument1, argument2), and one optional argument, optArgument3, it could be called at least four ways:

```
' Without optional argument
```

```
result = ProcedureName("A", "B")
```

```
' With optional argument
```



```
result = ProcedureName("A", "B", "C")
```

' Using named arguments (allows a different order)

```
result = ProcedureName(optArgument3:="C", argument1:="A",  
argument2:="B")
```

' Mixing named and unnamed arguments

```
result = ProcedureName("A", "B", optArgument3:="C")
```

The structure of the function header being called here would look something like this:

```
Function ProcedureName(argument1 As String, argument2 As String,  
Optional optArgument3 As String) As String
```

The **Optional** keyword indicates that this argument can be omitted. As mentioned before - any optional arguments introduced in the header **must** appear at the end, after any required arguments.

You can also provide a *default* value for the argument in the case that a value isn't passed to the function:

```
Function ProcedureName(argument1 As String, argument2 As String,  
Optional optArgument3 As String = "C") As String
```

In this function, if the argument for c isn't supplied it's value will default to "C". If a value is supplied then this will override the default value.

Section 29.4: Explicit Call Syntax

```
Call ProcedureName
```

```
Call ProcedureName(argument1, argument2)
```

The explicit call syntax requires the **Call** keyword and parentheses around the argument list; parentheses are redundant if there are no parameters. This syntax was made obsolete when the more modern implicit call syntax was added to VB.

Section 29.5: Return Values

To retrieve the result of a procedure call (e.g. **Function** or **Property Get** procedures), put the call on the right-hand side of an assignment:

```
result = ProcedureName
```

```
result = ProcedureName(argument1, argument2)
```

Parentheses must be present if there are parameters. If the procedure has no

parameters, the parentheses are redundant.

Chapter 30: Conditional Compilation

Section 30.1: Changing code behavior at compile time

The **#Const** directive is used to define a custom preprocessor constant. These can later be used by **#If** to control which blocks of code get compiled and executed.

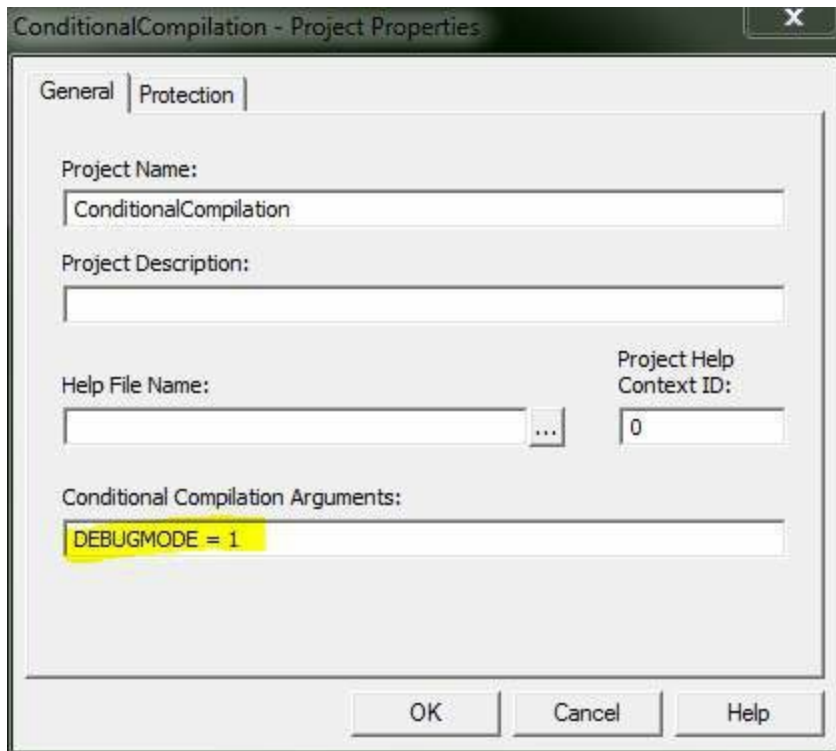
```
#Const DEBUGMODE = 1  
#If DEBUGMODE Then
```

```
Const filepath As String = "C:\Users\UserName\Path\To\File.txt"  
#Else  
Const filepath As String = "\\server\share\path\to\file.txt"  
#End If
```

This results in the value of filepath being set to "C:\Users\UserName\Path\To\File.txt". Removing the **#Const** line, or changing it to **#Const** DEBUGMODE = 0 would result in the filepath being set to "\\server\share\path\to\file.txt".

#Const Scope

The **#Const** directive is only effective for a single code file (module or class). It must be declared for each and every file you wish to use your custom constant in. Alternatively, you can declare a **#Const** globally for your project by going to Tools >> [Your Project Name] Project Properties. This will bring up the project properties dialog box where we'll enter the constant declaration. In the "Conditional Compilation Arguments" box, type in [constName] = [value]. You can enter more than 1 constant by separating them with a colon, like [constName1] = [value1] : [constName2] = [value2].



Pre-defined Constants

Some compilation constants are already pre-defined. Which ones exist will depend on the bitness of the office version you're running VBA in. Note that Vba7 was introduced alongside Office 2010 to support 64 bit versions of Office.

Constant	16 bit	32 bit	64 bit	Vba6	False If Vba6	False Vba7	False If Vba7
Win16	True	False	False	Win32	False	True	True
Win64	False	False	True	Mac	False	If Mac	If Mac

Note that Win64/Win32 refer to the Office version, not the Windows version. For example Win32 = TRUE in 32-bit Office, even if the OS is a 64-bit version of Windows.

Section 30.2: Using Declare Imports that work on all versions of Office

#If Vba7 Then

' It's important to check for Win64 first,

' because Win32 will also return true when Win64 does.

#If Win64 Then

Declare PtrSafe **Function** GetFoo64 **Lib** "exampleLib32" () **As** LongLong
#Else

Declare PtrSafe **Function** GetFoo **Lib** "exampleLib32" () **As** Long **#End If**
#Else

' Must be Vba6, the PtrSafe keyword didn't exist back then, ' so we need to declare Win32 imports a bit differently than above.

#If Win32 Then

Declare Function GetFoo **Lib** "exampleLib32"() **As** Long **#Else**
Declare Function GetFoo **Lib** "exampleLib"() **As** Integer **#End If**
#End If

This can be simplified a bit depending on what versions of office you need to support. For example, not many people are still supporting 16 bit versions of Office. The last version of 16 bit office was version 4.3, released in 1994, so the following declaration is sufficient for nearly all modern cases (including Office 2007).

#If Vba7 Then

*' It's important to check for Win64 first,
' because Win32 will also return true when Win64 does.*

#If Win64 Then

Declare PtrSafe **Function** GetFoo64 **Lib** "exampleLib32" () **As** LongLong
#Else
Declare PtrSafe **Function** GetFoo **Lib** "exampleLib32" () **As** Long **#End If**
#Else

' Must be Vba6. We don't support 16 bit office, so must be Win32.

Declare Function GetFoo **Lib** "exampleLib32"() **As** Long **#End If**

If you don't have to support anything older than Office 2010, this declaration works just fine.

' We only have 2010 installs, so we already know we have Vba7.

#If Win64 Then

```
Declare PtrSafe Function GetFoo64 Lib "exampleLib32" () As LongLong  
#Else  
Declare PtrSafe Function GetFoo Lib "exampleLib32" () As Long #End If
```

Chapter 31: Object-Oriented VBA

Section 31.1: Abstraction

Abstraction levels help determine when to split things up.

Abstraction is achieved by implementing functionality with increasingly detailed code. The entry point of a macro should be a small procedure with a *high abstraction level* that makes it easy to grasp at a glance what's going on:

```
Public Sub DoSomething()  
With New SomeForm  
Set .Model = CreateViewModel  
.Show vbModal  
If .IsCancelled Then Exit Sub  
ProcessUserData .Model
```

```
End With  
End Sub
```

The DoSomething procedure has a high *abstraction level*: we can tell that it's displaying a form and creating some model, and passing that object to some ProcessUserData procedure that knows what to do with it - how the model is created is the job of another procedure:

```
Private Function CreateViewModel() As ISomeModel  
Dim result As ISomeModel  
Set result = SomeModel.Create(Now, Environ$("UserName"))  
result.AvailableItems = GetAvailableItems  
Set CreateViewModel = result
```

```
End Function
```

The CreateViewModel function is only responsible for creating some ISomeModel instance. Part of that responsibility is to acquire an array of *available items* - how these items are acquired is an implementation detail

that's abstracted behind the GetAvailableItems procedure:

```
Private Function GetAvailableItems() As Variant  
GetAvailableItems = DataSheet.Names("AvailableItems").RefersToRange  
End Function
```

Here the procedure is reading the available values from a named range on a DataSheet worksheet. It could just as well be reading them from a database, or the values could be hard-coded: it's an *implementation detail* that's none of a concern for any of the higher abstraction levels.

Section 31.2: Encapsulation

Encapsulation hides implementation details from client code.

The Handling QueryClose example demonstrates encapsulation: the form has a checkbox control, but its client code doesn't work with it directly - the checkbox is an *implementation detail*, what the client code needs to know is whether the setting is enabled or not.

When the checkbox value changes, the handler assigns a private field member:

```
Private Type TView  
IsCancelled As Boolean  
SomeOtherSetting As Boolean  
'other properties skipped for brevity
```

```
End Type  
Private this As TView  
'...
```

```
Private Sub SomeOtherSettingInput_Change()  
this.SomeOtherSetting = CBool(SomeOtherSettingInput.Value)  
End Sub
```

And when the client code wants to read that value, it doesn't need to worry about a checkbox - instead it simply uses the SomeOtherSetting property:

```
Public Property Get SomeOtherSetting() As Boolean SomeOtherSetting =  
this.SomeOtherSetting  
End Property
```

The SomeOtherSetting property *encapsulates* the checkbox' state; client code doesn't need to know that there's a checkbox involved, only that there's a setting with a Boolean value. By *encapsulating* the **Boolean** value, we've added an *abstraction layer* around the checkbox.

Using interfaces to enforce immutability

Let's push that a step further by *encapsulating* the form's *model* in a dedicated class module. But if we made a **Public Property** for the UserName and Timestamp, we would have to expose **Property Let** accessors, making the properties mutable, and we don't want the client code to have the ability to change these values after they're set.

The CreateViewModel function in the **Abstraction** example returns an ISomeModel class: that's our *interface*, and it looks something like this:

```
Option Explicit  
Public Property Get Timestamp() As Date End Property  
Public Property Get UserName() As String End Property  
Public Property Get AvailableItems() As Variant End Property  
Public Property Let AvailableItems(ByRef value As Variant) End  
Property  
Public Property Get SomeSetting() As String End Property  
Public Property Let SomeSetting(ByVal value As String) End Property  
Public Property Get SomeOtherSetting() As Boolean End Property  
Public Property Let SomeOtherSetting(ByVal value As Boolean) End  
Property
```

Notice Timestamp and UserName properties only expose a **Property Get** accessor. Now the SomeModel class can implement that interface:

```
Option Explicit  
Implements ISomeModel
```

```
Private Type TModel  
Timestamp As Date  
UserName As String
```

SomeSetting **As String** SomeOtherSetting **As Boolean** AvailableItems **As**
Variant

End Type

Private this **As** TModel

Private Property Get ISomeModel_Timestamp() **As** Date

ISomeModel_Timestamp = this.Timestamp

End Property

Private Property Get ISomeModel_UserName() **As** String

ISomeModel_UserName = this.UserName

End Property

Private Property Get ISomeModel_AvailableItems() **As** Variant

ISomeModel_AvailableItems = this.AvailableItems

End Property

Private Property Let ISomeModel_AvailableItems(**ByRef** value **As**

Variant) this.AvailableItems = value

End Property

Private Property Get ISomeModel_SomeSetting() **As** String

ISomeModel_SomeSetting = this.SomeSetting

End Property

Private Property Let ISomeModel_SomeSetting(**ByVal** value **As** String)

this.SomeSetting = value

End Property

Private Property Get ISomeModel_SomeOtherSetting() **As** Boolean

ISomeModel_SomeOtherSetting = this.SomeOtherSetting

End Property

Private Property Let ISomeModel_SomeOtherSetting(**ByVal** value **As**

Boolean) this.SomeOtherSetting = value

End Property

Public Property Get Timestamp() **As Date** Timestamp = this.Timestamp
End Property

Public Property Let Timestamp(**ByVal** value **As Date**) this.Timestamp = value
End Property

Public Property Get UserName() **As String** UserName = this.UserName
End Property

Public Property Let UserName(**ByVal** value **As String**) this.UserName = value
End Property

Public Property Get AvailableItems() **As Variant** AvailableItems = this.AvailableItems
End Property

Public Property Let AvailableItems(**ByRef** value **As Variant**) this.AvailableItems = value
End Property

Public Property Get SomeSetting() **As String** SomeSetting = this.SomeSetting
End Property

Public Property Let SomeSetting(**ByVal** value **As String**) this.SomeSetting = value
End Property

Public Property Get SomeOtherSetting() **As Boolean** SomeOtherSetting = this.SomeOtherSetting
End Property

Public Property Let SomeOtherSetting(**ByVal** value **As Boolean**) this.SomeOtherSetting = value
End Property

The interface members are all **Private**, and all members of the interface must be implemented for the code to compile. The **Public** members are not part of the interface, and are therefore not exposed to code written against the ISomeModel interface.

Using a Factory Method to simulate a constructor

Using a VB_PredeclaredId attribute, we can make the SomeModel class have a *default instance*, and write a function that works like a type-level (**Shared** in VB.NET, **static** in C#) member that the client code can call without needing to first create an instance, like we did here:

```
Private Function CreateViewModel() As ISomeModel
Dim result As ISomeModel
Set result = SomeModel.Create(Now, Environ$("UserName"))
result.AvailableItems = GetAvailableItems
Set CreateViewModel = result
```

End Function

This *factory method* assigns the property values that are read-only when accessed from the ISomeModel interface, here Timestamp and UserName:

```
Public Function Create(ByVal pTimeStamp As Date, ByVal pUserName As
String) As ISomeModel With New SomeModel
    .Timestamp = pTimeStamp
    .UserName = pUserName
Set Create = .Self
```

End With

End Function

```
Public Property Get Self() As ISomeModel Set Self = Me
End Property
```

And now we can code against the ISomeModel interface, which exposes Timestamp and UserName as read-only properties that can never be reassigned (as long as the code is written against the interface).

Section 31.3: Polymorphism

Polymorphism is the ability to present the same interface for different underlying implementations.

The ability to implement interfaces allows completely decoupling the application logic from the UI, or from the database, or from this or that worksheet.

Say you have an `ISomeView` interface that the form itself implements:

Option Explicit

Public Property Get IsCancelled() **As** Boolean

End Property

Public Property Get Model() **As** ISomeModel

End Property

Public Property Set Model(**ByVal** value **As** ISomeModel)

End Property

Public Sub Show()

End Sub

The form's code-behind could look like this:

Option Explicit

Implements ISomeView

Private Type TView

IsCancelled **As** Boolean Model **As** ISomeModel

End Type

Private this **As** TView

Private Property Get ISomeView_IsCancelled() **As** Boolean

ISomeView_IsCancelled = this.IsCancelled

End Property

Private Property Get ISomeView_Model() **As** ISomeModel **Set**

ISomeView_Model = this.Model

End Property

Private Property Set ISomeView_Model(**ByVal** value **As** ISomeModel) **Set**

this.Model = value

End Property

```
Private Sub ISomeView_Show() Me.Show vbModal  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub SomeOtherSettingInput_Change()  
this.Model.SomeOtherSetting = CBool(SomeOtherSettingInput.Value)  
End Sub
```

```
'...other event handlers...
```

```
Private Sub OkButton_Click() Me.Hide
```

```
Private Sub CancelButton_Click() this.IsCancelled = True Me.Hide
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub UserForm_QueryClose(Cancel As Integer, CloseMode As Integer) If CloseMode = VbQueryClose.vbFormControlMenu Then  
Cancel = True  
this.IsCancelled = True  
Me.Hide
```

```
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

But then, nothing forbids creating another class module that implements the ISomeView interface *without being a user form* - this could be a SomeViewMock class:

```
Option Explicit
```

```
Implements ISomeView
```

```
Private Type TView
```

```
IsCancelled As Boolean Model As ISomeModel
```

```
End Type
```

```
Private this As TView
```

```
Public Property Get IsCancelled() As Boolean IsCancelled =  
this.IsCancelled
```

```
End Property
```

```
Public Property Let IsCancelled(ByVal value As Boolean) this.IsCancelled  
= value  
End Property
```

```
Private Property Get ISomeView_IsCancelled() As Boolean  
ISomeView_IsCancelled = this.IsCancelled  
End Property
```

```
Private Property Get ISomeView_Model() As ISomeModel Set  
ISomeView_Model = this.Model  
End Property
```

```
Private Property Set ISomeView_Model(ByVal value As ISomeModel) Set  
this.Model = value  
End Property
```

```
Private Sub ISomeView_Show() 'do nothing  
End Sub
```

And now we can change the code that works with a UserForm and make it work off the ISomeView interface, e.g. by giving it the form as a parameter instead of instantiating it:

```
Public Sub DoSomething(ByVal view As ISomeView) With view  
Set .Model = CreateViewModel  
.Show  
If .IsCancelled Then Exit Sub  
ProcessUserData .Model  
End With
```

Because the DoSomething method depends on an interface (i.e. an *abstraction*) and not a *concrete class* (e.g. a specific UserForm), we can write an automated unit test that ensures that ProcessUserData isn't executed when view.IsCancelled is **True**, by making our test create a SomeViewMock instance, setting its IsCancelled property to **True**, and passing it to DoSomething.

Testable code depends on abstractions

Writing unit tests in VBA can be done, there are add-ins out there that even integrate it into the IDE. But when code is *tightly coupled* with a worksheet, a database, a form, or the file system, then the unit test starts requiring an actual worksheet, database, form, or file system - and these *dependencies* are new out-of-control failure points that testable code should isolate, so that unit tests *don't* require an actual worksheet, database, form, or file system.

By writing code against interfaces, in a way that allows test code to *inject* stub/mock implementations (like the above SomeViewMock example), you can write tests in a "controlled environment", and simulate what happens when every single one of the 42 possible permutations of user interactions on the form's data, without even once displaying a form and manually clicking on a form control.

Chapter 32: Creating a Custom Class

Section 32.1: Adding a Property to a Class

A **Property** procedure is a series of statement that retrieves or modifies a custom property on a module.

There are three types of property accessors:

1. A **Get** procedure that returns the value of a property.
2. A **Let** procedure that assigns a (non**Object**) value to an object.
3. A **Set** procedure that assigns an **Object** reference.

Property accessors are often defined in pairs, using both a **Get** and **Let/Set** for each property. A property with only a **Get** procedure would be read-only, while a property with only a **Let/Set** procedure would be write-only. In the following example, four property accessors are defined for the DateRange class:

1. StartDate (*read/write*). Date value representing the earlier date in a range. Each procedure uses the value of the module variable, mStartDate.
2. EndDate (*read/write*). Date value representing the later date in a range. Each procedure uses the value of the module variable, mEndDate.

3. DaysBetween (*read-only*). Calculated Integer value representing the number of days between the two dates. Because there is only a **Get** procedure, this property cannot be modified directly.
4. RangeToCopy (*write-only*). A **Set** procedure used to copy the values of an existing DateRange object.

```
Private mStartDate As Date
Private mEndDate As Date
' Module variable to hold the starting date ' Module variable to hold the
ending date
' Return the current value of the starting date Public Property Get
StartDate() As Date StartDate = mStartDate
End Property
' Set the starting date value. Note that two methods have the name StartDate

Public Property Let StartDate(ByVal NewValue As Date)
mStartDate = NewValue
End Property

' Same thing, but for the ending date Public Property Get EndDate() As
Date EndDate = mEndDate
End Property

Public Property Let EndDate(ByVal NewValue As Date) mEndDate =
NewValue
End Property

' Read-only property that returns the number of days between the two dates
Public Property Get DaysBetween() As Integer
DaysBetween = DateDiff("d", mStartDate, mEndDate)
End Function

' Write-only property that passes an object reference of a range to clone
Public Property Set RangeToCopy(ByRef ExistingRange As DateRange)
Me.StartDate = ExistingRange.StartDate Me.EndDate =
ExistingRange.EndDate End Property
```

Section 32.2: Class module scope, instantiation and re-use

By default, a new class module is a Private class, so it is *only* available for instantiation and use within the VBProject in which it is defined. You can declare, instantiate and use the class anywhere in the *same* project:

'Class List has Instancing set to Private

'In any other module in the SAME project, you can use:

Dim items **As** List

Set items = **New** List

But often you'll write classes that you'd like to use in other projects *without* copying the module between projects. If you define a class called List in ProjectA, and want to use that class in ProjectB, then you'll need to perform 4 actions:

1. Change the instancing property of the List class in ProjectA in the Properties window, from **Private** to PublicNotCreatable
2. Create a public "factory" function in ProjectA that creates and returns an instance of a List class. Typically the factory function would include arguments for the initialization of the class instance. The factory function is required because the class can be used by ProjectB but ProjectB cannot directly create an instance of ProjectA's class.

```
Public Function CreateList(ParamArray values() As Variant) As List Dim  
tempList As List  
Dim itemCounter As Long  
Set tempList = New List  
For itemCounter = LBound(values) to UBound(values)
```

```
tempList.Add values(itemCounter)
```

```
Next itemCounter
```

```
Set CreateList = tempList
```

End Function

3. In ProjectB add a reference to ProjectA using the Tools..References... menu.
4. In ProjectB, declare a variable and assign it an instance of List using the factory function from ProjectA

```
Dim items As ProjectA.List
```



```
Set items = ProjectA.CreateList("foo","bar")
```

```
'Use the items list methods and properties items.Add "fizz"
```

```
Debug.Print items.ToString()
```

```
'Destroy the items object
```

```
Set items = Nothing
```

Section 32.3: Adding Functionality to a Class

Any public **Sub**, **Function**, or **Property** inside a class module can be called by preceding the call with an object reference:

Object.Procedure

In a `DateRange` class, a **Sub** could be used to add a number of days to the end date:

```
Public Sub AddDays(ByVal NoDays As Integer) mEndDate = mEndDate +  
NoDays  
End Sub
```

A **Function** could return the last day of the next month-end (note that `GetFirstDayOfMonth` would not be visible outside the class because it is private):

```
Public Function GetNextMonthEndDate() As Date  
GetNextMonthEndDate = DateAdd("m", 1, GetFirstDayOfMonth())  
End Function
```

```
Private Function GetFirstDayOfMonth() As Date  
GetFirstDayOfMonth = DateAdd("d", DatePart("d", mEndDate), mEndDate)  
End Function
```

Procedures can accept arguments of any type, including references to objects of the class being defined.

The following example tests whether the current `DateRange` object has a starting date and ending date that includes the starting and ending date of another `DateRange` object.

```
Public Function ContainsRange(ByRef TheRange As DateRange) As
```

Boolean

```
ContainsRange = TheRange.StartDate >= Me.StartDate And  
TheRange.EndDate <= Me.EndDate  
End Function
```

Note the use of the Me notation as a way to access the value of the object running the code.

Chapter 33: Interfaces

An **Interface** is a way to define a set of behaviors that a class will perform. The definition of an interface is a list of method signatures (name, parameters, and return type). A class having all of the methods is said to "implement" that interface.

In VBA, using interfaces lets the compiler check that a module implements all of its methods. A variable or parameter can be defined in terms of an interface instead of a specific class.

Section 33.1: Multiple Interfaces in One Class - Flyable and Swimmable

Using the Flyable example as a starting point, we can add a second interface, Swimmable, with the following code:

```
Sub Swim()  
' No code  
End Sub
```

The Duck object can Implement both flying and swimming:

```
Implements Flyable  
Implements Swimmable
```

```
Public Sub Flyable_Fly()  
Debug.Print "Flying With Wings!"  
End Sub
```

```
Public Function Flyable_GetAltitude() As Long  
Flyable_GetAltitude = 30  
End Function
```

```
Public Sub Swimmable_Swim()  
Debug.Print "Floating on the water"  
End Sub
```

A Fish class can implement Swimmable, too:

Implements Swimmable

```
Public Sub Swimmable_Swim()  
Debug.Print "Swimming under the water"  
End Sub
```

Now, we can see that the Duck object can be passed to a Sub as a Flyable on one hand, and a Swimmable on the other:

Sub InterfaceTest()

```
Dim MyDuck As New Duck  
Dim MyAirplane As New Airplane Dim MyFish As New Fish
```

```
Debug.Print "Fly Check..."  
FlyAndCheckAltitude MyDuck FlyAndCheckAltitude MyAirplane  
Debug.Print "Swim Check..."  
TrySwimming MyDuck TrySwimming MyFish  
End Sub
```

```
Public Sub FlyAndCheckAltitude(F As Flyable) F.Fly  
Debug.Print F.GetAltitude
```

End Sub

```
Public Sub TrySwimming(S As Swimmable) S.Swim  
End Sub
```

The output of this code is:

Fly Check...

Flying With Wings!

30

Flying With Jet Engines!

10000

Swim Check...

Floating on the water Swimming under the water

Section 33.2: Simple Interface - Flyable

The interface Flyable is a class module with the following code:

```
Public Sub Fly()
```

```
' No code.
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Public Function GetAltitude() As Long
```

```
' No code.
```

```
End Function
```

A class module, Airplane, uses the **Implements** keyword to tell the compiler to raise an error unless it has two methods: a Flyable_Fly() sub and a Flyable_GetAltitude() function that returns a **Long**.

```
Implements Flyable
```

```
Public Sub Flyable_Fly()
```

```
Debug.Print "Flying With Jet Engines!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Public Function Flyable_GetAltitude() As Long Flyable_GetAltitude =  
10000
```

```
End Function
```

A second class module, Duck, also implements Flyable:

```
Implements Flyable
```

```
Public Sub Flyable_Fly()
```

```
Debug.Print "Flying With Wings!"
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Public Function Flyable_GetAltitude() As Long Flyable_GetAltitude = 30  
End Function
```

We can write a routine that accepts any Flyable value, knowing that it will respond to a command of Fly or GetAltitude:

```
Public Sub FlyAndCheckAltitude(F As Flyable) F.Fly  
Debug.Print F.GetAltitude
```

```
End Sub
```

Because the interface is defined, the IntelliSense popup window will show Fly and GetAltitude for F.

When we run the following code:

```
Dim MyDuck As New Duck  
Dim MyAirplane As New Airplane  
FlyAndCheckAltitude MyDuck FlyAndCheckAltitude MyAirplane  
The output is:
```

Flying With Wings!

30

Flying With Jet Engines! 10000

Note that even though the subroutine is named Flyable_Fly in both Airplane and Duck, it can be called as Fly when the variable or parameter is defined as Flyable. If the variable is defined specifically as a Duck, it would have to be called as Flyable_Fly.

Chapter 34: Recursion

A function that calls itself is said to be *recursive*. Recursive logic can often be implemented as a loop, too. Recursion must be controlled with a parameter, so that the function knows when to stop recursing and deepening the call stack. *Infinite recursion* eventually causes a run-time error '28': "Out of stack space".

See Recursion.

Section 34.1: Factorials

```

Function Factorial(Value As Long) As Long
If Value = 0 Or Value = 1 Then
    Factorial = 1
Else
    Factorial = Factorial(Value 1) * Value
End If
End Function

```

Section 34.2: Folder Recursion

Early Bound (with a reference to Microsoft Scripting Runtime)

```

Sub EnumerateFilesAndFolders( _
    FolderPath As String, _
    Optional MaxDepth As Long = 1, _
    Optional CurrentDepth As Long = 0, _ Optional Indentation As Long = 2)

```

```

    Dim FSO As Scripting.FileSystemObject Set FSO = New
    Scripting.FileSystemObject

```

'Check the folder exists

```

If FSO.FolderExists(FolderPath) Then Dim fldr As Scripting.Folder

```

```

    Set fldr = FSO.GetFolder(FolderPath)

```

'Output the starting directory path **If** CurrentDepth = 0 **Then**

```

    Debug.Print fldr.Path

```

```

End If

```

'Enumerate the subfolders

```

    Dim subFldr As Scripting.Folder

```

```

    For Each subFldr In fldr.SubFolders

```

```

        Debug.Print Space$((CurrentDepth + 1) * Indentation) & subFldr.Name If
        CurrentDepth < MaxDepth Or MaxDepth = 1 Then

```

'Recursively call EnumerateFilesAndFolders

```

        EnumerateFilesAndFolders subFldr.Path, MaxDepth, CurrentDepth + 1,
        Indentation

```

```

    End If

```

Next subFldr

'Enumerate the files

Dim fil **As** Scripting.File

For Each fil **In** fldr.Files

Debug.Print Space\$((CurrentDepth + 1) * Indentation) & fil.Name **Next** fil

End If

End Sub

Chapter 35: Events

Section 35.1: Sources and Handlers

What are events?

VBA is *event-driven*: VBA code runs in response to events raised by the host application or the host document understanding events is fundamental to understanding VBA.

APIs often expose objects that raise a number of *events* in response to various states. For example an Excel.Application object raises an event whenever a new workbook is created, opened, activated, or closed. Or whenever a worksheet gets calculated. Or just before a file is saved. Or immediately after. A button on a form raises a Click event when the user clicks it, the user form itself raises an event just after it's activated, and another just before it's closed.

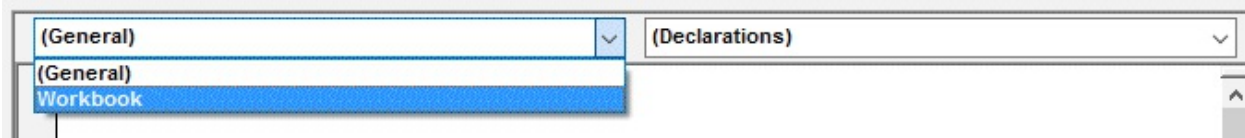
From an API perspective, events are *extension points*: the client code can chose to implement code that *handles* these events, and execute custom code whenever these events are fired: that's how you can execute your custom code automatically every time the selection changes on any worksheet - by handling the event that gets fired when the selection changes on any worksheet.

An object that exposes events is an *event source*. A method that handles an event is a *handler*.

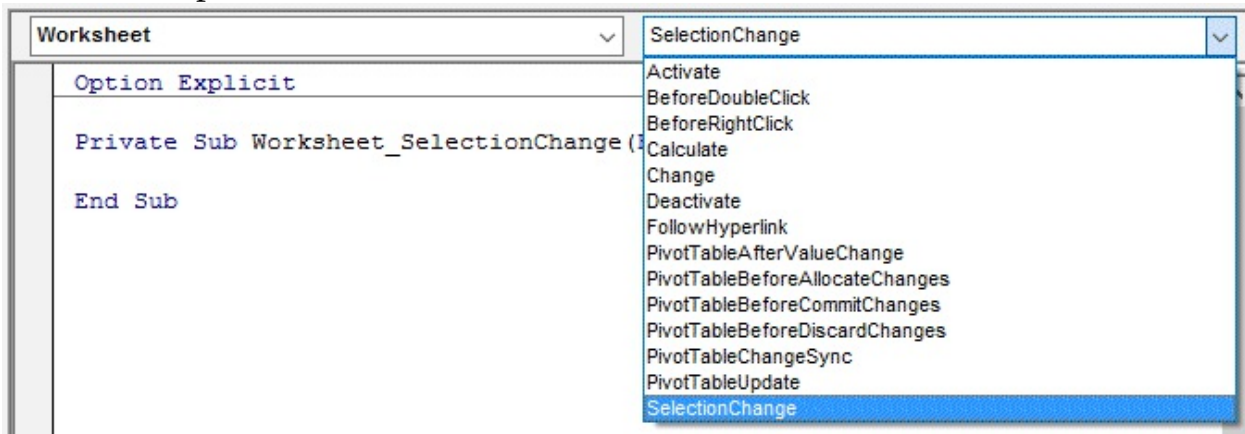
Handlers

VBA document modules (e.g. ThisDocument, ThisWorkbook, Sheet1, etc.)

and UserForm modules are *class modules* that *implement* special interfaces that expose a number of *events*. You can browse these interfaces in the left-side dropdown at the top of the code pane:



The right-side dropdown lists the members of the interface selected in the left-side dropdown:



The VBE automatically generates an event handler stub when an item is selected on the right-side list, or navigates there if the handler exists.

You can define a module-scoped **WithEvents** variable in any module:

```
Private WithEvents Foo As Workbook Private WithEvents Bar As
Worksheet
```

Each **WithEvents** declaration becomes available to select from the left-side dropdown. When an event is selected in the right-side dropdown, the VBE generates an event handler stub named after the **WithEvents** object and the name of the event, joined with an underscore:

```
Private WithEvents Foo As Workbook Private WithEvents Bar As
Worksheet
```

```
Private Sub Foo_Open()
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub Bar_SelectionChange(ByVal Target As Range)
```

```
End Sub
```

Only types that expose at least one event can be used with **WithEvents**, and **WithEvents** declarations cannot be assigned a reference on-the-spot with the

New keyword. This code is illegal:

```
Private WithEvents Foo As New Workbook 'illegal
```

The object reference must be **Set** explicitly; in a class module, a good place to do that is often in the `Class_Initialize` handler, because then the class handles that object's events for as long as its instance exists.

Sources

Any class module (or document module, or user form) can be an event source. Use the **Event** keyword to define the *signature* for the event, in the *declarations section* of the module:

```
Public Event SomethingHappened(ByVal something As String)
```

The signature of the event determines how the event is raised, and what the event handlers will look like.

Events can only be *raised* within the class they're defined in - client code can only *handle* them. Events are raised with the **RaiseEvent** keyword; the event's arguments are provided at that point:

```
Public Sub DoSomething()
```

```
RaiseEvent SomethingHappened("hello")
```

```
End Sub
```

Without code that handles the `SomethingHappened` event, running the `DoSomething` procedure will still raise the event, but nothing will happen. Assuming the event source is the above code in a class named `Something`, this code in `ThisWorkbook` would show a message box saying "hello" whenever `test.DoSomething` gets called:

```
Private WithEvents test As Something
```

```
Private Sub Workbook_Open() Set test = New Something test.DoSomething
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub test_SomethingHappened(ByVal bar As String)
```

```
'this procedure runs whenever 'test' raises the 'SomethingHappened' event
```

```
MsgBox bar End Sub
```

Section 35.2: Passing data back to the event source

Using parameters passed by reference

An event may define a **ByRef** parameter meant to be returned to the caller:

```
Public Event BeforeSomething(ByRef cancel As Boolean)
```

```
Public Event AfterSomething()
```

```
Public Sub DoSomething()
```

```
Dim cancel As Boolean
```

```
RaiseEvent BeforeSomething(cancel)
```

```
If cancel Then Exit Sub
```

```
'todo: actually do something
```

```
RaiseEvent AfterSomething
```

```
End Sub
```

If the BeforeSomething event has a handler that sets its cancel parameter to **True**, then when execution returns from the handler, cancel will be **True** and AfterSomething will never be raised.

```
Private WithEvents foo As Something
```

```
Private Sub foo_BeforeSomething(ByRef cancel As Boolean) cancel =
```

```
MsgBox("Cancel?", vbYesNo) = vbYes
```

```
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub foo_AfterSomething() MsgBox "Didn't cancel!"
```

```
End Sub
```

Assuming the foo object reference is assigned somewhere, when foo.DoSomething runs, a message box prompts whether to cancel, and a second message box says "didn't cancel" only when No was selected.

Using mutable objects

You could also pass a copy of a mutable object **ByVal**, and let handlers modify that object's properties; the caller can then read the modified property values and act accordingly.

```
'class module ReturnBoolean Option Explicit
```

```
Private encapsulated As Boolean
```

```
Public Property Get ReturnValue() As Boolean 'Attribute
```

```
ReturnValue.VB_UserMemId = 0 ReturnValue = encapsulated
```

```
End Property
```

```
Public Property Let ReturnValue(ByVal value As Boolean) encapsulated =  
value  
End Property
```

Combined with the Variant type, this can be used to create rather non-obvious ways to return a value to the caller:

```
Public Event SomeEvent(ByVal foo As Variant)
```

```
Public Sub DoSomething()
```

```
Dim result As ReturnBoolean result = New ReturnBoolean
```

```
RaiseEvent SomeEvent(result)
```

```
If result Then ' If result.ReturnValue Then 'handler changed the value to  
True
```

```
Else
```

```
'handler didn't modify the value
```

```
End If
```

```
End Sub
```

The handler would look like this:

```
Private Sub source_SomeEvent(ByVal foo As Variant) 'foo is actually a  
ReturnBoolean object foo = True 'True is actually assigned to  
foo.ReturnValue, the class' default member  
End Sub
```

Chapter 36: Scripting.Dictionary object

You must add Microsoft Scripting Runtime to the VBA project through the VBE's Tools → References command in order to implement early binding of the Scripting Dictionary object. This library reference is carried with the project; it does not have to be re-referenced when the VBA project is distributed and run on another computer.

Section 36.1: Properties and Methods

A [Scripting Dictionary object](#) stores information in Key/Item pairs. The Keys

must be unique and not an array but the associated Items can be repeated (their uniqueness is held by the companion Key) and can be of any type of variant or object.

A dictionary can be thought of as a two field in-memory database with a primary unique index on the first 'field' (the *Key*). This unique index on the Keys property allows very fast 'lookups' to retrieve a Key's associated Item value.

Properties

name read/write type

CompareMode *read / write* CompareMode constant

description

Setting the CompareMode can only be performed on an empty dictionary. Accepted values are 0 (vbBinaryCompare), 1 (vbTextCompare), 2 (vbDatabaseCompare).

Count *read only* unsigned long integer A one-based count of the key/item pairs in the scripting dictionary object.

Key *read / write* non-array variant Each individual unique key in the dictionary.

Item(Key) *read / write* any variant

Default property. Each individual item associated with a key in the dictionary. Note that attempting to retrieve an item with a key that does not exist in the dictionary will *implicitly add* the passed key.

Methods

name description

Add(Key,Item) Adds a new Key and Item to the dictionary. The new key must not exist in the dictionary's current Keys collection but an item can be repeated among many unique keys.

Exists(Key) Boolean test to determine if a Key already exists in the dictionary.

Keys Returns the array or collection of unique keys.

Items Returns the array or collection of associated items.

Remove(Key) Removes an individual dictionary key and its associated item.

RemoveAll Clears all of a dictionary object's keys and items.

Sample Code

'Populate, enumerate, locate and remove entries in a dictionary that was created 'with late binding

Sub iterateDictionaryLate()

Dim k **As** Variant, dict **As** Object

Set dict = CreateObject("Scripting.Dictionary")

dict.CompareMode = vbTextCompare *'non-case sensitive compare model*

'populate the dictionary

dict.Add Key:="Red", Item:="Balloon" dict.Add Key:="Green",

Item:="Balloon" dict.Add Key:="Blue", Item:="Balloon"

'iterate through the keys

For Each k **In** dict.Keys

Debug.Print k & " - " & dict.Item(k) **Next** k

'locate the Item for Green Debug.Print dict.Item("Green")

'remove key/item pairs from the dictionary

dict.Remove "blue" *'remove individual key/item pair by key* dict.RemoveAll

'remove all remaining key/item pairs

End Sub

'Populate, enumerate, locate and remove entries in a dictionary that was created 'with early binding (see Remarks)

Sub iterateDictionaryEarly()

Dim d **As** Long, k **As** Variant

Dim dict **As New** Scripting.Dictionary

dict.CompareMode = vbTextCompare *'non-case sensitive compare model*

'populate the dictionary

```
dict.Add Key:="Red", Item:="Balloon" dict.Add Key:="Green",  
Item:="Balloon" dict.Add Key:="Blue", Item:="Balloon" dict.Add  
Key:="White", Item:="Balloon"
```

'iterate through the keys

```
For Each k In dict.Keys  
Debug.Print k & " - " & dict.Item(k) Next k
```

'iterate through the keys by the count

```
For d = 0 To dict.Count 1  
Debug.Print dict.Keys(d) & " - " & dict.Items(d) Next d  
'iterate through the keys by the boundaries of the keys collection For d =  
LBound(dict.Keys) To UBound(dict.Keys)  
Debug.Print dict.Keys(d) & " - " & dict.Items(d) Next d
```

'locate the Item for Green

```
Debug.Print dict.Item("Green")
```

'locate the Item for the first key

```
Debug.Print dict.Item(dict.Keys(0))
```

'locate the Item for the last key

```
Debug.Print dict.Item(dict.Keys(UBound(dict.Keys)))
```

'remove key/item pairs from the dictionary dict.Remove "blue"

```
dict.Remove dict.Keys(0)
```

```
dict.Remove dict.Keys(UBound(dict.Keys)) dict.RemoveAll
```

*'remove individual key/item pair by key 'remove first key/item by index
position 'remove last key/item by index position 'remove all remaining
key/item pairs*

End Sub

Chapter 37: Working with ADO

Section 37.1: Making a connection to a data source

The first step in accessing a data source via ADO is creating an ADO Connection object. This is typically done using a connection string to specify the data source parameters, although it is also possible to open a DSN

connection by passing the DSN, user ID, and password to the .Open method.

Note that a DSN is not required to connect to a data source via ADO - any data source that has an ODBC provider can be connected to with the appropriate connection string. While specific connection strings for different providers are outside of the scope of this topic, ConnectionStrings.com is an excellent reference for finding the appropriate string for your provider.

```
Const SomeDSN As String =  
"DSN=SomeDSN;Uid=UserName;Pwd=MyPassword;"
```

```
Public Sub Example()  
Dim database As ADODB.Connection  
Set database = OpenDatabaseConnection(SomeDSN)  
If Not database Is Nothing Then  
  
    '... Do work.  
    database.Close 'Make sure to close all database connections.  
End If  
End Sub
```

```
Public Function OpenDatabaseConnection(ConnString As String) As  
ADODB.Connection On Error GoTo Handler  
Dim database As ADODB.Connection  
Set database = New ADODB.Connection  
  
With database  
    .ConnectionString = ConnString  
    .ConnectionTimeout = 10 'Value is given in seconds.  
    .Open
```

```
End With  
OpenDatabaseConnection = database
```

```
Exit Function  
Handler:  
Debug.Print "Database connection failed. Check your connection string."  
End Function
```

Note that the database password is included in the connection string in the example above only for the sake of clarity. Best practices would dictate *not* storing database passwords in code. This can be accomplished by taking the password via user input or using Windows authentication.

Section 37.2: Creating parameterized commands

Any time SQL executed through an ADO connection needs to contain user input, it is considered best practice to parameterize it in order to minimize the chance of SQL injection. This method is also more readable than long concatenations and facilitates more robust and maintainable code (i.e. by using a function that returns an array of Parameter).

In standard ODBC syntax, parameters are given ? "placeholders" in the query text, and then parameters are appended to the Command in the same order that they appear in the query.

Note that the example below uses the OpenDatabaseConnection function from the Making a connection to a data source for brevity.

```
Public Sub UpdateTheFoos()  
On Error GoTo Handler  
Dim database As ADODB.Connection  
Set database = OpenDatabaseConnection(SomeDSN)  
  
If Not database Is Nothing Then  
  Dim update As ADODB.Command  
  Set update = New ADODB.Command  
  'Build the command to pass to the data source.  
  With update  
  
    .ActiveConnection = database  
    .CommandText = "UPDATE Table SET Foo = ? WHERE Bar = ?"  
    .CommandType = adCmdText  
  
    'Create the parameters.  
    Dim fooValue As ADODB.Parameter  
    Set fooValue = .CreateParameter("FooValue", adNumeric, adParamInput)  
    fooValue.Value = 42
```



```
Dim condition As ADODB.Parameter
Set condition = .CreateParameter("Condition", adBSTR, adParamInput)
condition.Value = "Bar"
```

```
'Add the parameters to the Command
```

```
.Parameters.Append fooValue
.Parameters.Append condition
.Execute
```

```
End With
```

```
End If
```

```
CleanExit:
```

```
If Not database Is Nothing And database.State = adStateOpen Then
database.Close
```

```
End If
```

```
Exit Sub
```

```
Handler:
```

```
Debug.Print "Error " & Err.Number & ": " & Err.Description
```

```
Resume CleanExit
```

```
End Sub
```

Note: The example above demonstrates a parameterized UPDATE statement, but any SQL statement can be given parameters.

Section 37.3: Retrieving records with a query

Queries can be performed in two ways, both of which return an ADO Recordset object which is a collection of returned rows. Note that both of the examples below use the OpenDatabaseConnection function from the Making a connection to a data source example for the purpose of brevity. Remember that the syntax of the SQL passed to the data source is provider specific.

The first method is to pass the SQL statement directly to the Connection object, and is the easiest method for executing simple queries:

```
Public Sub DisplayDistinctItems()
```

```
On Error GoTo Handler
```

```

Dim database As ADODB.Connection
Set database = OpenDatabaseConnection(SomeDSN)

If Not database Is Nothing Then
Dim records As ADODB.Recordset
Set records = database.Execute("SELECT DISTINCT Item FROM Table")
'Loop through the returned Recordset.
Do While Not records.EOF 'EOF is false when there are more records.

'Individual fields are indexed either by name or 0 based ordinal. 'Note that
this is using the default .Fields member of the Recordset. Debug.Print
records("Item")
'Move to the next record.
records.MoveNext

```

```

Loop
End If

```

CleanExit:

```

If Not records Is Nothing Then records.Close
If Not database Is Nothing And database.State = adStateOpen Then

database.Close
End If
Exit Sub

```

Handler:

```

Debug.Print "Error " & Err.Number & ": " & Err.Description
Resume CleanExit

```

```

End Sub

```

The second method is to create an ADO Command object for the query you want to execute. This requires a little more code, but is necessary in order to use parametrized queries:

```

Public Sub DisplayDistinctItems()
On Error GoTo Handler
Dim database As ADODB.Connection

```

Set database = OpenDatabaseConnection(SomeDSN)

If Not database **Is Nothing Then**

Dim query **As** ADODB.Command

Set query = **New** ADODB.Command

'Build the command to pass to the data source. With query

.ActiveConnection = database

.CommandText = "SELECT DISTINCT Item FROM Table" .CommandType

= adCmdText

End With

Dim records **As** ADODB.Recordset

'Execute the command to retrieve the recordset. Set records =

query.Execute()

Do While Not records.EOF

Debug.Print records("Item")

records.MoveNext

Loop

End If

CleanExit:

If Not records **Is Nothing Then** records.Close

If Not database **Is Nothing And** database.State = adStateOpen **Then**

database.Close

End If

Exit Sub

Handler:

Debug.Print "Error " & Err.Number & ": " & Err.Description **Resume**

CleanExit

End Sub

Note that commands sent to the data source are **vulnerable to SQL**

injection, either intentional or unintentional. In general, queries should not be created by concatenating user input of any kind. Instead, they should be parameterized (see Creating parameterized commands).

Section 37.4: Executing non-scalar functions

ADO connections can be used to perform pretty much any database function that the provider supports via SQL. In this case it isn't always necessary to use the Recordset returned by the Execute function, although it can be useful for obtaining key assignments after INSERT statements with @@Identity or similar SQL commands. Note that the example below uses the OpenDatabaseConnection function from the Making a connection to a data source example for the purpose of brevity.

```
Public Sub UpdateTheFoos()  
On Error GoTo Handler  
Dim database As ADODB.Connection  
Set database = OpenDatabaseConnection(SomeDSN)  
  
If Not database Is Nothing Then  
  Dim update As ADODB.Command  
  Set update = New ADODB.Command  
  'Build the command to pass to the data source.  
  With update  
    .ActiveConnection = database  
    .CommandText = "UPDATE Table SET Foo = 42 WHERE Bar IS NULL"  
    .CommandType = adCmdText  
    .Execute 'We don't need the return from the DB, so ignore it.  
  End With  
End If  
CleanExit:  
  
If Not database Is Nothing And database.State = adStateOpen Then  
  database.Close  
End If  
Exit Sub
```

Handler:

```
Debug.Print "Error " & Err.Number & ": " & Err.Description
```

```
Resume CleanExit
```

```
End Sub
```

Note that commands sent to the data source are **vulnerable to SQL injection**, either intentional or unintentional. In general, SQL statements should not be created by concatenating user input of any kind. Instead, they should be parameterized (see Creating parameterized commands).

Chapter 38: Attributes

Section 38.1: VB_PredeclaredId

Creates a Global Default Instance of a class. The default instance is accessed via the name of the class.

Declaration

```
VERSION 1.0 CLASS
```

```
BEGIN
```

```
MultiUse = 1 'True
```

```
END
```

```
Attribute VB_Name = "Class1"
```

```
Attribute VB_GlobalNameSpace = False
```

```
Attribute VB_Creatable = False
```

```
Attribute VB_PredeclaredId = True
```

```
Attribute VB_Exposed = False
```

```
Option Explicit
```

```
Public Function GiveMeATwo() As Integer
```

```
GiveMeATwo = 2
```

```
End Function
```

Call

```
Debug.Print Class1.GiveMeATwo
```

In some ways, this simulates the behavior of static classes in other languages, but unlike other languages, you can still create an instance of the class.

```
Dim cls As Class1
Set cls = New Class1
Debug.Print cls.GiveMeATwo
```

Section 38.2: VB_[Var]UserMemId

VB_VarUserMemId (for module-scope variables) and VB_UserMemId (for procedures) attributes are used in VBA mostly for two things.

Specifying the default member of a class

A List class that would encapsulate a Collection would want to have an Item property, so the client code can do this:

```
For i = 1 To myList.Count 'VBA Collection Objects are 1-based
Debug.Print myList.Item(i)
Next
```

But with a VB_UserMemId attribute set to 0 on the Item property, the client code can do this:

```
For i = 1 To myList.Count 'VBA Collection Objects are 1-based
Debug.Print
myList(i)
Next
```

Only one member can legally have VB_UserMemId = 0 in any given class. For properties, specify the attribute in the **Get** accessor:

Option Explicit

Private internal **As New** Collection

```
Public Property Get Count() As Long Count = internal.Count
End Property
```

```
Public Property Get Item(ByVal index As Long) As Variant
Attribute Item.VB_Description = "Gets or sets the element at the specified
index." Attribute Item.VB_UserMemId = 0
'Gets the element at the specified index.
```

```
Item = internal(index)
```

```
End Property
```

Public Property Let Item(**ByVal** index **As** Long, **ByVal** value **As** Variant)
'Sets the element at the specified index.

With internal

If index = .Count + 1 **Then**

.Add item:=value

ElseIf index = .Count **Then**

.Remove index

.Add item:=value

ElseIf index < .Count **Then**

.Remove index

.Add item:=value, before:=index

End If

End With

End Property

Making a class iterable with a For Each loop construct

With the magic value -4, the VB_UserMemId attribute tells VBA that this member yields an enumerator - which allows the client code to do this:

Dim item **As** Variant **For Each** item **In** myList Debug.Print item **Next**

The easiest way to implement this method is by calling the hidden [NewEnum] property getter on an internal/encapsulated Collection; the identifier needs to be enclosed in square brackets because of the leading underscore that makes it an illegal VBA identifier:

Public Property Get NewEnum() **As** IUnknown

Attribute NewEnum.VB_Description = "Gets an enumerator that iterates through the List." Attribute NewEnum.VB_UserMemId = 4

Attribute NewEnum.VB_MemberFlags = "40" *'would hide the member in VB6. not supported in VBA. 'Gets an enumerator that iterates through the List.*

Set NewEnum = internal.[_NewEnum]

End Property

Section 38.3: VB_Exposed

Controls the instancing characteristics of a class.

Attribute VB_Exposed = **False**

Makes the class **Private**. It cannot be accessed outside of the current project.

Attribute VB_Exposed = **True**

Exposes the class **Publicly**, outside of the project. However, since VB_Createable is ignored in VBA, instances of the class can not be created directly. This is equivalent to a the following VB.Net class.

Public Class Foo

Friend Sub New() **End Sub**

End Class

In order to get an instance from outside the project, you must expose a factory to create instances. One way of doing this is with a regular **Public** module.

Public Function CreateFoo() **As** Foo CreateFoo = **New** Foo

End Function

Since public modules are accessible from other projects, this allows us to create new instances of our **Public Not** Createable classes.

Section 38.4: VB_Description

Adds a text description to a class or module member that becomes visible in the Object Explorer. Ideally, all public members of a public interface / API should have a description.

Public Function GiveMeATwo() **As** Integer

Attribute GiveMeATwo.VB_Description = "Returns a two!"

GiveMeATwo = 2

End Property



Note: all accessor members of a property (**Get**, **Let**, **Set**) use the same description.

Section 38.5: VB_Name

VB_Name specifies the class or module name.

Attribute VB_Name = "Class1"

A new instance of this class would be created with

Dim myClass As Class1

myClass = **new** Class1

Section 38.6: VB_GlobalNameSpace

In VBA, this attribute is ignored. It was not ported over from VB6.

In VB6, it creates a Default Global Instance of the class (a "shortcut") so that class members can be accessed without using the class name. For example, DateTime (as in DateTime.Now) is actually part of the VBA.Conversion class. Debug.Print VBA.Conversion.DateTime.Now Debug.Print DateTime.Now

Section 38.7: VB_Createable

This attribute is ignored. It was not ported over from VB6.

In VB6, it was used in combination with the VB_Exposed attribute to control accessibility of classes outside of the current project.

VB_Exposed=**True**

VB_Createable=**True**

Would result in a **Public Class**, that could be accessed from other projects, but this functionality does not exist in VBA.

Chapter 39: User Forms

Section 39.1: Best Practices

A UserForm is a class module with a designer and a **default instance**. The *designer* can be accessed by pressing Shift + F7 while viewing the *code-behind*, and the *code-behind* can be accessed by pressing F7 while viewing the *designer*.

Work with a new instance every time.

Being a *class module*, a form is therefore a *blueprint* for an *object*. Because a form can hold state and data, it's a better practice to work with a new *instance* of the class, rather than with the default/global one:

```
With New UserForm1  
.Show vbModal  
If Not .IsCancelled Then
```

```
' ...
```

```
End If  
End With
```

Instead of:

```
UserForm1.Show vbModal  
If Not UserForm1.IsCancelled Then ' ...  
End If
```

Working with the default instance can lead to subtle bugs when the form is closed with the red "X" button and/or when Unload **Me** is used in the code-behind.

Implement the logic elsewhere.

A form should be concerned with nothing but *presentation*: a button Click handler that connects to a database and runs a parameterized query based on user input, is **doing too many things**.

Instead, implement the *applicative logic* in the code that's responsible for displaying the form, or even better, in dedicated modules and procedures.

Write the code in such a way that the UserForm is only ever responsible for knowing how to display and collect data: where the data comes from, or what happens with the data afterwards, is none of its concern.

Caller shouldn't be bothered with controls.

Make a well-defined *model* for the form to work with, either in its own dedicated class module, or encapsulated within the form's code-behind itself - expose the *model* with **Property Get** procedures, and have the client code work with these: this makes the form an *abstraction* over controls and their nitty-gritty details, exposing only the relevant data to the client code.

This means code that looks like this:

```
With New UserForm1 .Show vbModal
```

If Not .IsCancelled **Then**

MsgBox .Message, vbInformation **End If**

End With

Instead of this:

With New UserForm1

.Show vbModal

If Not .IsCancelled **Then**

MsgBox .txtMessage.Text, vbInformation **End If**

End With

Handle the QueryClose event.

Forms typically have a Close button, and prompts/dialogs have Ok and Cancel buttons; the user may close the form using the form's *control box* (the red "X" button), which destroys the form instance by default (another good reason to *work with a new instance every time*).

With New UserForm1

.Show vbModal

If Not .IsCancelled **Then** *'if QueryClose isn't handled, this can raise a runtime error.*

'...

End With

End With

The simplest way to handle the QueryClose event is to set the Cancel parameter to **True**, and then to *hide* the form instead of *closing* it:

Private Sub UserForm_QueryClose(Cancel **As Integer**, CloseMode **As Integer**) Cancel = **True**

Me.Hide

End Sub

That way the "X" button will never destroy the instance, and the caller can safely access all the public members.

Hide, don't close.

The code that creates an object should be responsible for destroying it: it's not the form's responsibility to unload and terminate itself.

Avoid using `Unload Me` in a form's code-behind. Call `Me.Hide` instead, so that the calling code can still use the object it created when the form closes.

Name things.

Use the *properties* toolwindow (F4) to carefully name each control on a form. The name of a control is used in the code-behind, so unless you're using a refactoring tool that can handle this, **renaming a control will break the code** - so it's much easier to do things right in the first place, than try to puzzle out exactly which of the 20 textboxes `TextBox12` stands for.

Traditionally, UserForm controls are named with Hungarian-style prefixes: `lblUserName` for a Label control that indicates a user name.

`txtUserName` for a TextBox control where the user can enter a user name.

`cboUserName` for a ComboBox control where the user can enter or pick a user name.

`lstUserName` for a ListBox control where the user can pick a user name. `btnOk` or `cmdOk` for a Button control labelled "Ok".

The problem is that when e.g. the UI gets redesigned and a ComboBox changes to a ListBox, the name needs to change to reflect the new control type: it's better to name controls for what they represent, rather than after their control type - to *decouple* the code from the UI as much as possible.

`UserNameLabel` for a read-only label that indicates a user name.

`UserNameInput` for a control where the user can enter or pick a user name.

`OkButton` for a command button labelled "Ok".

Whichever style is chosen, anything is better than leaving all controls their default names. Consistency in naming style is ideal, too.

Section 39.2: Handling QueryClose

The `QueryClose` event is raised whenever a form is about to be closed, whether it's via user action or programmatically. The `CloseMode` parameter contains a `VbQueryClose` enum value that indicates how the form was closed:

Constant Description Value

vbFormControlMenuForm is closing in response to user action 0

vbFormCode Form is closing in response to an Unload statement 1

vbAppWindows Windows session is ending 2

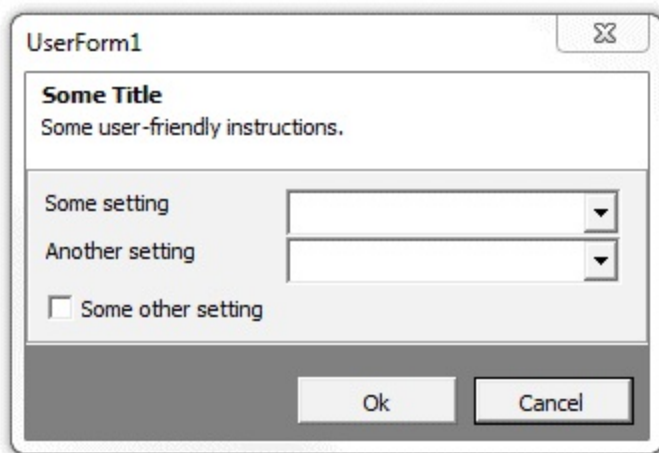
vbAppTaskManager Windows Task Manager is closing the host application 3

vbFormMDIForm Not supported in VBA 4

For better readability, it's best to use these constants instead of using their value directly.

A Cancellable UserForm

Given a form with a Cancel button



The form's code-behind could

look like this:

Option Explicit

Private Type TView

IsCancelled **As** Boolean

SomeOtherSetting **As** Boolean

'other properties skipped for brevity

End Type

Private this **As** TView

Public Property Get IsCancelled() **As** Boolean IsCancelled =
this.IsCancelled

End Property

Public Property Get SomeOtherSetting() **As** Boolean SomeOtherSetting =

```
this.SomeOtherSetting  
End Property
```

```
'...more properties...
```

```
Private Sub SomeOtherSettingInput_Change()  
this.SomeOtherSetting = CBool(SomeOtherSettingInput.Value)  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub OkButton_Click() Me.Hide  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub CancelButton_Click() this.IsCancelled = True Me.Hide  
  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub UserForm_QueryClose(Cancel As Integer, CloseMode As  
Integer) If CloseMode = VbQueryClose.vbFormControlMenu Then  
Cancel = True  
this.IsCancelled = True  
Me.Hide
```

```
End If  
End Sub
```

The calling code could then display the form, and know whether it was cancelled:

```
Public Sub DoSomething()  
With New UserForm1  
.Show vbModal  
If .IsCancelled Then Exit Sub If .SomeOtherSetting Then
```

```
'setting is enabled
```

```
Else  
'setting is disabled  
End If  
End With
```

End Sub

The IsCancelled property returns **True** when the Cancel button is clicked, or when the user closes the form using the *control box*.

Chapter 40: CreateObject vs. GetObject

Section 40.1: Demonstrating GetObject and CreateObject

MSDN-GetObject Function

Returns a reference to an object provided by an ActiveX component.

Use the GetObject function when there is a current instance of the object or if you want to create the object with a file already loaded. If there is no current instance, and you don't want the object started with a file loaded, use the CreateObject function.

Sub CreateVSGet()

Dim ThisXLApp **As** Excel.Application *'An example of early binding* **Dim** AnotherXLApp **As** Object *'An example of late binding* **Dim** ThisNewWB **As** Workbook

Dim AnotherNewWB **As** Workbook

Dim wb **As** Workbook

'Get this instance of Excel

Set ThisXLApp = GetObject(ThisWorkbook.Name).Application *'Create another instance of Excel*

Set AnotherXLApp = CreateObject("Excel.Application") *'Make the 2nd instance visible*

AnotherXLApp.Visible = **True**

'Add a workbook to the 2nd instance

Set AnotherNewWB = AnotherXLApp.Workbooks.Add *'Add a sheet to the 2nd instance*

AnotherNewWB.Sheets.Add

'You should now have 2 instances of Excel open 'The 1st instance has 1 workbook: Book1

'The 2nd instance has 1 workbook: Book2

'Lets add another workbook to our 1st instance **Set** ThisNewWB =

ThisXLApp.Workbooks.Add

'Now loop through the workbooks and show their names **For Each** wb **In**

ThisXLApp.Workbooks

Debug.Print wb.Name

Next

'Now the 1st instance has 2 workbooks: Book1 and Book3 'If you close the first instance of Excel,

'Book1 and Book3 will close, but book2 will still be open

End Sub

Chapter 41: Non-Latin Characters

VBA can read and write strings in any language or script using **Unicode**. However, there are stricter rules in place for **Identifier Tokens**.

Section 41.1: Non-Latin Text in VBA Code

In spreadsheet cell A1, we have the following Arabic pangram:

رَاطِعِمَآءِ الْجَنِّ اهْبُ عِيْجَضَلَا بَطْحَي — تَغَزَبْ ذِإِ سَمَشَلَا لِثَمَكِ دَوْخَ قَلَخَ فِصْ

VBA provides the AscW and ChrW functions to work with multi-byte character codes. We can also use **Byte** arrays to manipulate the string variable directly:

Sub NonLatinStrings()

Dim rng **As** Range

Set rng = Range("A1")

Do Until rng = ""

Dim MyString **As** String

MyString = rng.Value

' AscW functions

Dim char **As** String


```
char = AscW(Left(MyString, 1))
Debug.Print "First char (ChrW): " & char
Debug.Print "First char (binary): " & BinaryFormat(char, 12)
```

' ChrW functions

```
Dim uString As String
uString = ChrW(char)
Debug.Print "String value (text): " & uString ' Fails! Appears as '?'
Debug.Print "String value (AscW): " & AscW(uString)
```

' Using a Byte string

```
Dim StringAsByt() As Byte
StringAsByt = MyString
Dim i As Long
For i = 0 To 1 Step 2

Debug.Print "Byte values (in decimal): " & _
StringAsByt(i) & "|" & StringAsByt(i + 1)
Debug.Print "Byte values (binary): " & _
BinaryFormat(StringAsByt(i)) & "|" & BinaryFormat(StringAsByt(i + 1))
Next i
Debug.Print ""
```

' Printing the entire string to the immediate window fails (all '?'s)

```
Debug.Print "Whole String" & vbNewLine & rng.Value
Set rng = rng.Offset(1)
```

Loop

End Sub

This produces the following output for the [Arabic Letter Sad](#):

```
First char (ChrW): 1589
First char (binary): 00011000110101 String value (text): ?
String value (AscW): 1589
Byte values (in decimal): 53|6
Byte values (binary): 00110101|00000110
```

Whole String

??? ????? ????? ??????? ??????? ??? ??????? — ????? ?????????? ??? ???????
????????

Note that VBA is unable to print non-Latin text to the immediate window even though the string functions work correctly. This is a limitation of the IDE and not the language.

Section 41.2: Non-Latin Identifiers and Language Coverage

VBA Identifiers

(variable and function names) can use the Latin script and may also be able to use [Japanese](#), [Korean](#), [Simplified Chinese](#), and [Traditional Chinese](#) scripts.

The extended Latin script has full coverage for many languages:
English, French, Spanish, German, Italian, Breton, Catalan, Danish, Estonian, Finnish, Icelandic, Indonesian, Irish, Lojban, Mapudungun, Norwegian, Portuguese, Scottish Gaelic, Swedish, Tagalog

Some languages are only partially covered:
Azeri, Croatian, Czech, Esperanto, Hungarian, Latvian, Lithuanian, Polish, Romanian, Serbian, Slovak, Slovenian, Turkish, Yoruba, Welsh

Some languages have little or no coverage:
Arabic, Bulgarian, Cherokee, Dzongkha, Greek, Hindi, Macedonian, Malayalam, Mongolian, Russian, Sanskrit, Thai, Tibetan, Urdu, Uyghur

The following variable declarations are all valid:

```
Dim Yec'hed As String 'Breton
Dim «Dóna» As String 'Catalan
Dim fræk As String 'Danish
Dim tšellomängija As String 'Estonian
Dim Törkylempijävongahdus As String 'Finnish Dim j'examine As String
'French
Dim Paß As String 'German
Dim þjófum As String 'Icelandic
Dim hÓighe As String 'Irish
Dim sofybakni As String 'Lojban (.o'i does not work) Dim ñizol As String
'Mapudungun
```

Dim Vår **As** String 'Norwegian
Dim «braços» **As** String 'Portuguese
Dim d'fhàg **As** String 'Scottish Gaelic

Note that in the VBA IDE, a single apostrophe within a variable name does not turn the line into a comment (as it does on Stack Overflow).

Also, languages that use two angles to indicate a quote «» are allowed to use those in variable names despite the fact that the ""-type quotes are not.

Chapter 42: API Calls

API stands for [Application Programming Interface](#)

API's for VBA imply a set of methods that allow direct interaction with the operating system

System calls can be made by executing procedures defined in DLL files

Section 42.1: Mac APIs

[Microsoft doesn't officially support APIs](#)

but with some research more declarations can be found online

Office 2016 for Mac is sandboxed

Unlike other versions of Office apps that support VBA, Office 2016 for Mac apps are sandboxed.

Sandboxing restricts the apps from accessing resources outside the app container. This affects any add-ins or macros that involve file access or communication across processes. You can minimize the effects of sandboxing by using the new commands described in the following section.
New VBA commands for Office 2016 for Mac

The following VBA commands are new and unique to Office 2016 for Mac.

Command Use to

[GrantAccessToMultipleFiles](#) Request a user's permission to access multiple files at once

[AppleScriptTask](#)

[MAC_OFFICE_VERSION](#)

Call external AppleScript scripts from VB
IFDEF between different Mac Office versions at compile time
Office 2011 for Mac

```
Private Declare Function system Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal command As String) As Long  
Private Declare Function popen Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal command As String, ByVal mode As String) As Long  
Private Declare Function pclose Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal file As Long) As Long  
Private Declare Function fread Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal outStr As String, ByVal size As Long, ByVal items As Long, ByVal stream As Long) As Long  
Private Declare Function feof Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal file As Long) As Long
```

Office 2016 for Mac

```
Private Declare PtrSafe Function popen Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal command As String, ByVal mode As String) As LongPtr  
Private Declare PtrSafe Function pclose Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal file As LongPtr) As Long  
Private Declare PtrSafe Function fread Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal outStr As String, ByVal size As LongPtr, ByVal items As LongPtr, ByVal stream As LongPtr) As Long  
Private Declare PtrSafe Function feof Lib "libc.dylib" (ByVal file As LongPtr) As LongPtr
```

Section 42.2: Get total monitors and screen resolution

Option Explicit

'GetSystemMetrics32 info: [http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms724385\(VS.85\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/ms724385(VS.85).aspx) #If Win64 Then

```
Private Declare PtrSafe Function GetSystemMetrics32 Lib "User32" Alias "GetSystemMetrics" (ByVal nIndex As Long) As Long  
#ElseIf Win32 Then
```

```
Private Declare Function GetSystemMetrics32 Lib "User32" Alias "GetSystemMetrics" (ByVal nIndex As Long) As Long
```

#End If

'VBA Wrappers:

Public Function dllGetMonitors() **As Long**

Const SM_CMONITORS = 80

dllGetMonitors = GetSystemMetrics32(SM_CMONITORS)

End Function

Public Function dllGetHorizontalResolution() **As Long**

Const SM_CXVIRTUALSCREEN = 78

dllGetHorizontalResolution =

GetSystemMetrics32(SM_CXVIRTUALSCREEN)

End Function

Public Function dllGetVerticalResolution() **As Long**

Const SM_CYVIRTUALSCREEN = 79

dllGetVerticalResolution =

GetSystemMetrics32(SM_CYVIRTUALSCREEN)

End Function

Public Sub ShowDisplayInfo()

Debug.Print "Total monitors: " & vbTab & vbTab & dllGetMonitors

Debug.Print "Horizontal Resolution: " & vbTab &

dllGetHorizontalResolution Debug.Print "Vertical Resolution: " & vbTab &

dllGetVerticalResolution

'Total monitors: 1 'Horizontal Resolution: 1920 'Vertical Resolution: 1080

End Sub

Section 42.3: FTP and Regional APIs

modFTP

Option Explicit
Option Compare Text
Option Private Module

'http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa384180(v=VS.85).aspx
'http://www.dailydoseofexcel.com/archives/2006/01/29/ftp-via-vba/
'http://www.15seconds.com/issue/981203.htm

'Open the Internet object

Private Declare Function InternetOpen **Lib** "wininet.dll" **Alias**
"InternetOpenA" (_ **ByVal** sAgent **As** String, _
ByVal lAccessType **As** Long, _
ByVal sProxyName **As** String, _
ByVal sProxyBypass **As** String, _
ByVal lFlags **As** Long _

) **As** Long

'ex: lngINet = InternetOpen("MyFTP Control", 1, vbNullString,
vbNullString, 0)

'Connect to the network

Private Declare Function InternetConnect **Lib** "wininet.dll" **Alias**
"InternetConnectA" (_ **ByVal** hInternetSession **As** Long, _
ByVal sServerName **As** String, _
ByVal nServerPort **As** Integer, _
ByVal sUsername **As** String, _
ByVal sPassword **As** String, _
ByVal lService **As** Long, _
ByVal lFlags **As** Long, _
ByVal lContext **As** Long _

) **As** Long

'ex: lngINetConn = InternetConnect(lngINet, "ftp.microsoft.com", 0,
"anonymous", "wally@wallyworld.com", 1, 0, 0)

'Get a file

```

Private Declare Function FtpGetFile Lib "wininet.dll" Alias "FtpGetFileA"
(_ ByVal hFtpSession As Long, _
ByVal lpszRemoteFile As String, _
ByVal lpszNewFile As String, _
ByVal fFailIfExists As Boolean, _
ByVal dwFlagsAndAttributes As Long, _
ByVal dwFlags As Long, _
ByVal dwContext As Long _
) As Boolean
'ex: blnRC = FtpGetFile(lngINetConn, "dirmap.txt", "c:\dirmap.txt", 0, 0, 1,
0)

```

'Send a file

```

Private Declare Function FtpPutFile Lib "wininet.dll" Alias "FtpPutFileA"
_ ( _
ByVal hFtpSession As Long, _
ByVal lpszLocalFile As String, _
ByVal lpszRemoteFile As String, _
ByVal dwFlags As Long, ByVal dwContext As Long _
) As Boolean
'ex: blnRC = FtpPutFile(lngINetConn, "c:\dirmap.txt", "dirmap.txt", 1, 0)

```

'Delete a file

```

Private Declare Function FtpDeleteFile Lib "wininet.dll" Alias
"FtpDeleteFileA" _ ( _
ByVal hFtpSession As Long, _
ByVal lpszFileName As String _
) As Boolean
'ex: blnRC = FtpDeleteFile(lngINetConn, "test.txt")

```

'Close the Internet object

```

Private Declare Function InternetCloseHandle Lib "wininet.dll" (ByVal
hInet As Long) As Integer 'ex: InternetCloseHandle lngINetConn
'ex: InternetCloseHandle lngINet

```

```

Private Declare Function FtpFindFirstFile Lib "wininet.dll" Alias
"FtpFindFirstFileA" _ ( _
ByVal hFtpSession As Long, _ ByVal lpszSearchFile As String, _
lpFindFileData As WIN32_FIND_DATA, _ ByVal dwFlags As Long, _
ByVal dwContent As Long _
) As Long
Private Type FILETIME
dwLowDateTime As Long
dwHighDateTime As Long
End Type
Private Type WIN32_FIND_DATA
dwFileAttributes As Long ftCreationTime As FILETIME ftLastAccessTime
As FILETIME ftLastWriteTime As FILETIME nFileSizeHigh As Long
nFileSizeLow As Long
dwReserved0 As Long
dwReserved1 As Long
cFileName As String * MAX_FTP_PATH
cAlternate As String * 14
End Type
'ex: lngHINet = FtpFindFirstFile(lngINetConn, ".*.*", pData, 0, 0)

```

```

Private Declare Function InternetFindNextFile Lib "wininet.dll" Alias
"InternetFindNextFileA" _ ( _
ByVal hFind As Long, _
lpvFindData As WIN32_FIND_DATA _
) As Long
'ex: blnRC = InternetFindNextFile(lngHINet, pData)

```

```

Public Sub showLatestFTPVersion()
Dim ftpSuccess As Boolean, msg As String, lngFindFirst As Long Dim
lngINet As Long, lngINetConn As Long
Dim pData As WIN32_FIND_DATA
'init the filename buffer
pData.cFileName = String(260, 0)

msg = "FTP Error"
lngINet = InternetOpen("MyFTP Control", 1, vbNullString, vbNullString, 0)

```


If lngINet > 0 **Then**

lngINetConn = InternetConnect(lngINet, FTP_SERVER_NAME,
FTP_SERVER_PORT, FTP_USER_NAME, FTP_PASSWORD, 1, 0, 0)

If lngINetConn > 0 **Then**

FtpPutFile lngINetConn, "C:\Tmp\ftp.cls", "ftp.cls",

FTP_TRANSFER_BINARY, 0 *'lngFindFirst =*

FtpFindFirstFile(lngINetConn, "ExcelDiff.xlsm", pData, 0, 0) **If** lngINet = 0

Then

msg = "DLL error: " & Err.LastDllError & ", Error Number: " & Err.Number
& ", Error Desc: " & Err.Description

Else

msg = left(pData.cFileName, InStr(1, pData.cFileName, String(1, 0),
vbBinaryCompare) 1)

End If

InternetCloseHandle lngINetConn

End If

InternetCloseHandle lngINet

End If

MsgBox msg

End Sub

modRegional:

Option Explicit

Private Const LOCALE_SDECIMAL = &HE **Private Const**

LOCALE_SLIST = &HC

Private Declare Function GetLocaleInfo **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**

"GetLocaleInfoA" (**ByVal** Locale **As** Long, **ByVal** LCType **As** Long, **ByVal**
lpLCData **As** String, **ByVal** cchData **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function SetLocaleInfo **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**

"SetLocaleInfoA" (**ByVal** Locale **As** Long, **ByVal** LCType **As** Long, **ByVal**
lpLCData **As** String) **As** Boolean

Private Declare Function GetUserDefaultLCID% **Lib** "Kernel32" ()

Public Function getTimeSeparator() **As** String

getTimeSeparator = Application.International(xlTimeSeparator)

End Function

```

Public Function getDateSeparator() As String
getDateSeparator = Application.International(xlDateSeparator)
End Function

Public Function getListSeparator() As String
Dim ListSeparator As String, iRetVal1 As Long, iRetVal2 As Long,
lpLCDataVar As String,
Position As Integer, Locale As Long
Locale = GetUserDefaultLCID()
iRetVal1 = GetLocaleInfo(Locale, LOCALE_SLIST, lpLCDataVar, 0)
ListSeparator = String$(iRetVal1, 0)
iRetVal2 = GetLocaleInfo(Locale, LOCALE_SLIST, ListSeparator,
iRetVal1)
Position = InStr(ListSeparator, Chr$(0))
If Position > 0 Then ListSeparator = Left$(ListSeparator, Position - 1) Else
ListSeparator =
vbNullString
getListSeparator = ListSeparator
End Function

```

```

Private Sub ChangeSettingExample() 'change the setting of the character
displayed as the decimal separator.
Call SetLocalSetting(LOCALE_SDECIMAL, ",") 'to change to ","
Stop 'check your control panel to verify or use the GetLocaleInfo API
function
Call SetLocalSetting(LOCALE_SDECIMAL, ".") 'to back change to "."
End Sub

```

```

Private Function SetLocalSetting(LC_CONST As Long, Setting As String)
As Boolean Call SetLocaleInfo(GetUserDefaultLCID(), LC_CONST,
Setting)
End Function

```

Section 42.4: API declaration and usage

Declaring a DLL procedure
to work with different VBA versions:

Option Explicit

#If Win64 Then

Private Declare PtrSafe **Sub** xLib "Kernel32" **Alias** "Sleep" (**ByVal** dwMilliseconds **As Long**)

#ElseIf Win32 Then

Private Declare Sub apiSleep **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias** "Sleep" (**ByVal** dwMilliseconds **As Long**)

#End If

The above declaration tells VBA how to call the function "Sleep" defined in file Kernel32.dll

Win64 and Win32 are predefined constants used for conditional compilation
Pre-defined Constants

Some compilation constants are already pre-defined. Which ones exist will depend on the bitness of the office version you're running VBA in. Note that Vba7 was introduced alongside Office 2010 to support 64 bit versions of Office.

Constant 16 bit 32 bit 64 bit

Vba6 False If Vba6 False

Vba7 False If Vba7 True

Win16 True False False

Win32 False True True

Win64 False False True Mac False If Mac If Mac

These constants refer to the Office version, not the Windows version. For example Win32 = TRUE in 32-bit Office, even if the OS is a 64-bit version of Windows.

The main difference when declaring APIs is between 32 bit and 64 bit Office versions which introduced new parameter types (see Remarks section for more details)

Notes:

Declarations are placed at the top of the module, and outside any Subs or Functions Procedures declared in standard modules are public by default To declare a procedure private to a module precede the declaration with the **Private** keyword DLL procedures declared in any other type of module are private to that module

End Sub

```
result = system("open -a Safari --args http://www.google.com") Debug.Print
```

Str(result)

End Sub

The examples bellow (Windows API - Dedicated Module (1 and 2)) show an API module that includes common declarations for Win64 and Win32

Section 42.5: Windows API - Dedicated Module (1 of 2)

Option Explicit

```
#If Win64 Then 'Win64 = True, Win32 = False, Win16 = False
Private Declare PtrSafe Sub apiCopyMemory Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"RtlMoveMemory" (MyDest As Any,
MySource As Any, ByVal MySize As Long)
Private Declare PtrSafe Sub apiExitProcess Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"ExitProcess" (ByVal uExitCode
As Long)
Private Declare PtrSafe Sub apiSetCursorPos Lib "User32" Alias
"SetCursorPos" (ByVal X As
Integer, ByVal Y As Integer)
Private Declare PtrSafe Sub apiSleep Lib "Kernel32" Alias "Sleep" (ByVal
dwMilliseconds As
Long)
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiAttachThreadInput Lib "User32" Alias
"AttachThreadInput"
(ByVal idAttach As Long, ByVal idAttachTo As Long, ByVal fAttach As
Long) As Long Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiBringWindowToTop
Lib "User32" Alias "BringWindowToTop"
(ByVal lngHWND As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiCloseWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"CloseWindow" (ByVal hWnd As
Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiDestroyWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"DestroyWindow" (ByVal
hWnd As Long) As Boolean
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiEndDialog Lib "User32" Alias
"EndDialog" (ByVal hWnd As
```

Long, **ByVal** result **As** Long) **As** Boolean
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiEnumChildWindows **Lib** "User32"
Alias "EnumChildWindows"
 (**ByVal** hWndParent **As** Long, **ByVal** pEnumProc **As** Long, **ByVal** lParam
As Long) **As** Long **Private Declare** PtrSafe **Function** apiExitWindowsEx
Lib "User32" **Alias** "ExitWindowsEx" (**ByVal**
 uFlags **As** Long, **ByVal** dwReserved **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiFindExecutable **Lib** "Shell32" **Alias**
 "FindExecutableA" (**ByVal**
 lpFile **As** String, ByVal lpDirectory **As** String, **ByVal** lpResult **As** String) **As**
 Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiFindWindow **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "FindWindowA" (**ByVal**
 lpClassName **As** String, **ByVal** lpWindowName **As** String) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiFindWindowEx **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "FindWindowExA" (**ByVal**
 hWnd1 **As** Long, **ByVal** hWnd2 **As** Long, **ByVal** lpsz1 **As** String, **ByVal**
 lpsz2 **As** String) **As** Long **Private Declare** PtrSafe **Function**
 apiGetActiveWindow **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "GetActiveWindow" () **As**
 Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetClassNameA **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "GetClassNameA" (**ByVal**
 hWnd **As** Long, **ByVal** szClassName **As** String, **ByVal** lLength **As** Long) **As**
 Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetCommandLine **Lib** "Kernel32"
Alias "GetCommandLineW" () **As**
 Long

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetCommandLineParams **Lib**
 "Kernel32" **Alias** "GetCommandLineA" () **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetDiskFreeSpaceEx **Lib** "Kernel32"
Alias
 "GetDiskFreeSpaceExA" (**ByVal** lpDirectoryName **As** String,
 lpFreeBytesAvailableToCaller **As** Currency, lpTotalNumberOfBytes **As**
 Currency, lpTotalNumberOfFreeBytes **As** Currency) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetDriveType **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**
 "GetDriveTypeA" (**ByVal** nDrive **As** String) **As** Long

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetExitCodeProcess **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**
 "GetExitCodeProcess" (**ByVal** hProcess **As** Long, lpExitCode **As** Long) **As**
 Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetForegroundWindow **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "GetForegroundWindow" () **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetFrequency **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**
 "QueryPerformanceFrequency" (cyFrequency **As** Currency) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetLastError **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**
 "GetLastError" () **As** Integer
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetParent **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "GetParent" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetSystemMetrics **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "GetSystemMetrics" (**ByVal** nIndex **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetSystemMetrics32 **Lib** "User32"
Alias "GetSystemMetrics" (**ByVal** nIndex **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetTickCount **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**
 "QueryPerformanceCounter" (cyTickCount **As** Currency) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetTickCountMs **Lib** "Kernel32"
Alias "GetTickCount" () **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetUserName **Lib** "AdvApi32" **Alias**
 "GetUserNameA" (**ByVal** lpBuffer **As** String, nSize **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetWindow **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "GetWindow" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long, **ByVal** wCmd **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetWindowRect **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "GetWindowRect" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long, lpRect **As** winRect) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetWindowText **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
 "GetWindowTextA" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long, **ByVal** szWindowText **As**
 String, **ByVal** lLength **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetWindowThreadProcessId **Lib**
 "User32" **Alias** "GetWindowThreadProcessId" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long,
 lpdwProcessId **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiIsCharAlphaNumericA **Lib** "User32"
Alias
 "IsCharAlphaNumericA" (**ByVal** byChar **As** Byte) **As** Long
Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiIsIconic **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "IsIconic"


```

(ByVal hWnd As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiIsWindowVisible Lib "User32" Alias
"IsWindowVisible" (ByVal hWnd As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiIsZoomed Lib "User32" Alias
"IsZoomed" (ByVal hWnd As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiLStrCpynA Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"lstrcpynA" (ByVal pDestination As String, ByVal pSource As Long, ByVal
iMaxLength As Integer) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiMessageBox Lib "User32" Alias
"MessageBoxA" (ByVal hWnd As Long, ByVal lpText As String, ByVal
lpCaption As String, ByVal wType As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiOpenIcon Lib "User32" Alias
"OpenIcon" (ByVal hWnd As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiOpenProcess Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"OpenProcess" (ByVal dwDesiredAccess As Long, ByVal bInheritHandle
As Long, ByVal dwProcessId As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiPathAddBackslashByPointer Lib
"ShlwApi" Alias "PathAddBackslashW" (ByVal lpszPath As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiPathAddBackslashByString Lib
"ShlwApi" Alias "PathAddBackslashW" (ByVal lpszPath As String) As
Long
http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa155716%28office.10%29.aspx
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiPostMessage Lib "User32" Alias
"PostMessageA" (ByVal hWnd As Long, ByVal wMsg As Long, ByVal
wParam As Long, ByVal lParam As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiRegQueryValue Lib "AdvApi32"
Alias "RegQueryValue" (ByVal hKey As Long, ByVal sValueName As
String, ByVal dwReserved As Long, ByRef lValueType As Long, ByVal
sValue As String, ByRef lResultLen As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSendMessage Lib "User32" Alias
"SendMessageA" (ByVal hWnd
As Long, ByVal wMsg As Long, ByVal wParam As Long, lParam As Any)
As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSetActiveWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"SetActiveWindow" (ByVal
hWnd As Long) As Long

```



```

Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSetCurrentDirectoryA Lib "Kernel32"
Alias
"SetCurrentDirectoryA" (ByVal lpPathName As String) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSetFocus Lib "User32" Alias
"SetFocus" (ByVal hWnd As Long)
As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSetForegroundWindow Lib "User32"
Alias
"SetForegroundWindow" (ByVal hWnd As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSetLocalTime Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"SetLocalTime" (lpSystem
As SystemTime) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSetWindowPlacement Lib "User32"
Alias "SetWindowPlacement"
(ByVal hWnd As Long, ByRef lpwndpl As winPlacement) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSetWindowPos Lib "User32" Alias
"SetWindowPos" (ByVal hWnd
As Long, ByVal hWndInsertAfter As Long, ByVal X As Long, ByVal Y As
Long, ByVal cx As Long, ByVal
cy As Long, ByVal wFlags As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiSetWindowText Lib "User32" Alias
"SetWindowTextA" (ByVal
hWnd As Long, ByVal lpString As String) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiShellExecute Lib "Shell32" Alias
"ShellExecuteA" (ByVal
hWnd As Long, ByVal lpOperation As String, ByVal lpFile As String,
ByVal lpParameters As String,
ByVal lpDirectory As String, ByVal nShowCmd As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiShowWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"ShowWindow" (ByVal hWnd As
Long, ByVal nCmdShow As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiShowWindowAsync Lib "User32"
Alias "ShowWindowAsync" (ByVal
hWnd As Long, ByVal nCmdShow As Long) As Long
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiStrCpy Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"lstrcpynA" (ByVal pDestination
As String, ByVal pSource As String, ByVal iMaxLength As Integer) As

```

Long

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiStringLen **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias** "lstrlenW" (**ByVal** lpString

As Long) **As** Long

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiStrTrimW **Lib** "ShlwApi" **Alias** "StrTrimW" () **As** Boolean **Private Declare** PtrSafe **Function**

apiTerminateProcess **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias** "TerminateProcess" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long, **ByVal** uExitCode **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiTimeGetTime **Lib** "Winmm" **Alias** "timeGetTime" () **As** Long **Private Declare** PtrSafe **Function**

apiVarPtrArray **Lib** "MsVbVm50" **Alias** "VarPtr" (Var() **As** Any) **As**

Long

Private Type browseInfo *'used by apiBrowseForFolder*

hOwner **As** Long

pidlRoot **As** Long

pszDisplayName **As** String

lpszTitle **As** String

ulFlags **As** Long

lpfn **As** Long

lParam **As** Long

iImage **As** Long

End Type

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiBrowseForFolder **Lib** "Shell32" **Alias** "SHBrowseForFolderA"

(lpBrowseInfo **As** browseInfo) **As** Long

Private Type CHOOSECOLOR *'used by apiChooseColor;*

<http://support.microsoft.com/kb/153929> and

<http://www.cpearson.com/Excel/Colors.aspx>

lStructSize **As** Long

hWndOwner **As** Long

hInstance **As** Long

rgbResult **As** Long

lpCustColors **As** String

flags **As** Long

lCustData **As** Long

lpfnHook **As** Long

lpTemplateName **As** String

End Type

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiChooseColor **Lib** "ComDlg32" **Alias** "ChooseColorA"

(pChoosecolor **As** CHOOSECOLOR) **As** Long

Private Type FindWindowParameters *'Custom structure for passing in the parameters in/out of the hook enumeration function; could use global variables instead, but this is nicer* strTitle **As** String *'INPUT*

hWnd **As** Long *'OUTPUT*

End Type *'Find a specific window with dynamic caption from a list of all open windows:*

<http://www.everythingaccess.com/tutorials.asp?ID=Bring-an-external-application-window-to-the-foreground>

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiEnumWindows **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"EnumWindows" (**ByVal** lpEnumFunc **As** LongPtr, **ByVal** lParam **As** LongPtr) **As** Long

Private Type lastInputInfo *'used by apiGetLastInputInfo, getLastInputTime*

cbSize **As** Long

dwTime **As** Long

End Type

Private Declare PtrSafe **Function** apiGetLastInputInfo **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"GetLastInputInfo" (**ByRef** plii **As** lastInputInfo) **As** Long

'<http://www.pgacon.com/visualbasic.htm#Take%20Advantage%20of%20Conc>

'Logical and Bitwise Operators in Visual Basic:

[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/wz3k228a\(v=vs.80\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/wz3k228a(v=vs.80).aspx) and

<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/1070863/hidden-features-of-vba>

Private Type SystemTime

wYear **As** Integer

wMonth **As** Integer

wDayOfWeek **As** Integer

wDay **As** Integer

wHour **As** Integer

wMinute **As** Integer

wSecond **As** Integer

wMilliseconds **As** Integer

End Type

Private Declare PtrSafe **Sub** apiGetLocalTime **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**

"GetLocalTime" (lpSystem **As** SystemTime)

```

Private Type pointAPI 'used by apiSetWindowPlacement
X As Long
Y As Long
End Type
Private Type rectAPI 'used by apiSetWindowPlacement
Left_Renamed As Long
Top_Renamed As Long
Right_Renamed As Long
Bottom_Renamed As Long
End Type
Private Type winPlacement 'used by apiSetWindowPlacement
length As Long
flags As Long
showCmd As Long
ptMinPosition As pointAPI
ptMaxPosition As pointAPI
rcNormalPosition As rectAPI
End Type
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiGetWindowPlacement Lib "User32"
Alias "GetWindowPlacement" (ByVal hWnd As Long, ByRef lpwndpl As
winPlacement) As Long
Private Type winRect 'used by apiMoveWindow
Left As Long
Top As Long
Right As Long
Bottom As Long
End Type
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiMoveWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"MoveWindow" (ByVal hWnd As Long, xLeft As Long, ByVal yTop As
Long, wWidth As Long, ByVal hHeight As Long, ByVal repaint As Long)
As Long

Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiInternetOpen Lib "WiniNet" Alias
"InternetOpenA" (ByVal

sAgent As String, ByVal lAccessType As Long, ByVal sProxyName As
String, ByVal sProxyBypass As String, ByVal lFlags As Long) As Long

```

'Open the Internet object 'ex: lngINet = InternetOpen("MyFTP Control", 1, vbNullString, vbNullString, 0)

Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiInternetConnect **Lib** "WiniNet" **Alias** "InternetConnectA" (**ByVal** hInternetSession **As** Long, **ByVal** sServerName **As** String, **ByVal** nServerPort **As** Integer, **ByVal** sUsername **As** String, **ByVal** sPassword **As** String, **ByVal** lService **As** Long, **ByVal** lFlags **As** Long, **ByVal** lContext **As** Long) **As** Long *'Connect to the network 'ex: lngINetConn = InternetConnect(lngINet, "ftp.microsoft.com", 0, "anonymous", "wally@wallyworld.com", 1, 0, 0)*

Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiFtpGetFile **Lib** "WiniNet" **Alias** "FtpGetFileA" (**ByVal** hFtpSession **As** Long, **ByVal** lpszRemoteFile **As** String, **ByVal** lpszNewFile **As** String, **ByVal** fFailIfExists **As** Boolean, **ByVal** dwFlagsAndAttributes **As** Long, **ByVal** dwFlags **As** Long, **ByVal** dwContext **As** Long) **As** Boolean *'Get a file 'ex: blnRC = FtpGetFile(lngINetConn, "dirmap.txt", "c:\dirmap.txt", 0, 0, 1, 0)*

Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiFtpPutFile **Lib** "WiniNet" **Alias** "FtpPutFileA" (**ByVal** hFtpSession **As** Long, **ByVal** lpszLocalFile **As** String, **ByVal** lpszRemoteFile **As** String, **ByVal** dwFlags **As** Long, **ByVal** dwContext **As** Long) **As** Boolean *'Send a file 'ex: blnRC = FtpPutFile(lngINetConn, "c:\dirmap.txt", "dirmap.txt", 1, 0)*

Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiFtpDeleteFile **Lib** "WiniNet" **Alias** "FtpDeleteFileA" (**ByVal** hFtpSession **As** Long, **ByVal** lpszFileName **As** String) **As** Boolean *'Delete a file 'ex: blnRC = FtpDeleteFile(lngINetConn, "test.txt")*

Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiInternetCloseHandle **Lib** "WiniNet" (**ByVal** hInet **As** Long) **As** Integer *'Close the Internet object 'ex: InternetCloseHandle lngINetConn 'ex: InternetCloseHandle lngINet*

Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiFtpFindFirstFile **Lib** "WiniNet" **Alias** "FtpFindFirstFileA" (**ByVal** hFtpSession **As** Long, **ByVal** lpszSearchFile **As** String, lpFindFileData **As** WIN32_FIND_DATA, **ByVal** dwFlags **As** Long, **ByVal** dwContent **As** Long) **As** Long

```

Private Type FILETIME
dwLowDateTime As Long
dwHighDateTime As Long

End Type
Private Type WIN32_FIND_DATA
dwFileAttributes As Long
ftCreationTime As FILETIME
ftLastAccessTime As FILETIME
ftLastWriteTime As FILETIME
nFileSizeHigh As Long
nFileSizeLow As Long
dwReserved0 As Long
dwReserved1 As Long
cFileName As String * 1 'MAX_PATH
cAlternate As String * 14
End Type 'ex: lngHINet = FtpFindFirstFile(lngINetConn, "*.*", pData, 0, 0)
Private Declare PtrSafe Function apiInternetFindNextFile Lib "WiniNet"
Alias "InternetFindNextFileA" (ByVal hFind As Long, lpvFindData As
WIN32_FIND_DATA) As Long 'ex: blnRC =
InternetFindNextFile(lngHINet, pData)
#ElseIf Win32 Then 'Win32 = True, Win16 = False

```

(continued in second example)

Section 42.6: Windows API - Dedicated Module (2 of 2)

```

#ElseIf Win32 Then 'Win32 = True, Win16 = False
Private Declare Sub apiCopyMemory Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"RtlMoveMemory" (MyDest As Any, MySource
As Any, ByVal MySize As Long)
Private Declare Sub apiExitProcess Lib "Kernel32" Alias "ExitProcess"
(ByVal uExitCode As Long) 'Private Declare Sub apiGetStartupInfo Lib
"Kernel32" Alias "GetStartupInfoA" (lpStartupInfo As
STARTUPINFO)
Private Declare Sub apiSetCursorPos Lib "User32" Alias "SetCursorPos"
(ByVal X As Integer,

```

ByVal Y **As Integer**) *'Logical and Bitwise Operators in Visual Basic:
[http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/wz3k228a\(v=vs.80\).aspx](http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/wz3k228a(v=vs.80).aspx) and
<http://stackoverflow.com/questions/1070863/hidden-features-of-vba>
'<http://www.pgacon.com/visualbasic.htm#Take%20Advantage%20of%20Conc>*

Private Declare Sub apiSleep **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias** "Sleep" (**ByVal**
dwMilliseconds **As Long**) **Private Declare Function** apiAttachThreadInput
Lib "User32" **Alias** "AttachThreadInput" (**ByVal**
idAttach **As Long**, **ByVal** idAttachTo **As Long**, **ByVal** fAttach **As Long**) **As**
Long

Private Declare Function apiBringWindowToTop **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
"BringWindowToTop" (**ByVal**
lngHWnd **As Long**) **As Long**

Private Declare Function apiCloseHandle **Lib** "Kernel32" (**ByVal** hObject
As Long) **As Long** **Private Declare Function** apiCloseWindow **Lib**
"User32" **Alias** "CloseWindow" (**ByVal** hWnd **As Long**)
As Long

*'Private Declare Function apiCreatePipe Lib "Kernel32" (phReadPipe As
Long, phWritePipe As Long,
lpPipeAttributes As SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES, ByVal nSize As Long) As
Long*

*'Private Declare Function apiCreateProcess Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"CreateProcessA" (ByVal
lpApplicationName As Long, ByVal lpCommandLine As String,
lpProcessAttributes As Any,
lpThreadAttributes As Any, ByVal bInheritHandles As Long, ByVal
dwCreationFlags As Long,
lpEnvironment As Any, ByVal lpCurrentDirectory As String, lpStartupInfo As
STARTUPINFO,
lpProcessInformation As PROCESS_INFORMATION) As Long*

Private Declare Function apiDestroyWindow **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
"DestroyWindow" (**ByVal** hWnd **As**
Long) **As Boolean**

Private Declare Function apiEndDialog **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "EndDialog"
(**ByVal** hWnd **As Long**, **ByVal**
result **As Long**) **As Boolean**

Private Declare Function apiEnumChildWindows **Lib** "User32" **Alias**
"EnumChildWindows" (**ByVal**


```

hWndParent As Long, ByVal pEnumProc As Long, ByVal lParam As Long)
As Long
Private Declare Function apiExitWindowsEx Lib "User32" Alias
"ExitWindowsEx" (ByVal uFlags As
Long, ByVal dwReserved As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function apiFindExecutable Lib "Shell32" Alias
"FindExecutableA" (ByVal lpFile
As String, ByVal lpDirectory As String, ByVal lpResult As String) As Long
Private Declare Function apiFindWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"FindWindowA" (ByVal lpClassName As
String, ByVal lpWindowName As String) As Long
Private Declare Function apiFindWindowEx Lib "User32" Alias
"FindWindowExA" (ByVal hWnd1 As
Long, ByVal hWnd2 As Long, ByVal lpsz1 As String, ByVal lpsz2 As
String) As Long Private Declare Function apiGetActiveWindow Lib
"User32" Alias "GetActiveWindow" () As Long Private Declare Function
apiGetClassNameA Lib "User32" Alias "GetClassNameA" (ByVal hWnd As
Long, ByVal szClassName As String, ByVal lLength As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function apiGetCommandLine Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"GetCommandLineW" () As Long Private Declare Function
apiGetCommandLineParams Lib "Kernel32" Alias "GetCommandLineA" ()
As
Long
Private Declare Function apiGetDiskFreeSpaceEx Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"GetDiskFreeSpaceExA"
(ByVal lpDirectoryName As String, lpFreeBytesAvailableToCaller As
Currency, lpTotalNumberOfBytes As
Currency, lpTotalNumberOfFreeBytes As Currency) As Long
Private Declare Function apiGetDriveType Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"GetDriveTypeA" (ByVal nDrive As
String) As Long
Private Declare Function apiGetExitCodeProcess Lib "Kernel32" (ByVal
hProcess As Long,
lpExitCode As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function apiGetFileSize Lib "Kernel32" (ByVal hFile As
Long, lpFileSizeHigh As
Long) As Long

```


Private Declare Function apiGetForegroundWindow **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "GetForegroundWindow" () **As**

Long

Private Declare Function apiGetFrequency **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**

"QueryPerformanceFrequency"

(cyFrequency **As** Currency) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiGetLastError **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**

"GetLastError" () **As** Integer **Private Declare Function** apiGetParent **Lib**

"User32" **Alias** "GetParent" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long) **As**

Long

Private Declare Function apiGetSystemMetrics **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"GetSystemMetrics" (**ByVal**

nIndex **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiGetTickCount **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**

"QueryPerformanceCounter"

(cyTickCount **As** Currency) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiGetTickCountMs **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias**

"GetTickCount" () **As** Long **Private Declare Function** apiGetUserName **Lib**

"AdvApi32" **Alias** "GetUserNameA" (**ByVal** lpBuffer **As**

String, nSize **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiGetWindow **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "GetWindow"

(**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long, **ByVal**

wCmd **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiGetWindowRect **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"GetWindowRect" (**ByVal** hWnd **As**

Long, lpRect **As** winRect) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiGetWindowText **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"GetWindowTextA" (**ByVal** hWnd **As**

Long, **ByVal** szWindowText **As** String, **ByVal** lLength **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiGetWindowThreadProcessId **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"GetWindowThreadProcessId" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long, lpdwProcessId **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiIsCharAlphaNumericA **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"IsCharAlphaNumericA" (**ByVal**

byChar **As** Byte) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiIsIconic **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "IsIconic" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long) **As** Long **Private Declare Function** apiIsWindowVisible **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "IsWindowVisible" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare Function apiIsZoomed **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "IsZoomed" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long) **As** Long **Private Declare Function** apiLStrCpynA **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias** "lstrcpynA" (**ByVal** pDestination **As** String, **ByVal** pSource **As** Long, **ByVal** iMaxLength **As** Integer) **As** Long
Private Declare Function apiMessageBox **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "MessageBoxA" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long, **ByVal** lpText **As** String, **ByVal** lpCaption **As** String, **ByVal** wType **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare Function apiOpenIcon **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "OpenIcon" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long) **As** Long **Private Declare Function** apiOpenProcess **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias** "OpenProcess" (**ByVal** dwDesiredAccess **As** Long, **ByVal** bInheritHandle **As** Long, **ByVal** dwProcessId **As** Long) **As** Long **Private Declare Function** apiPathAddBackslashByPointer **Lib** "ShlwApi" **Alias** "PathAddBackslashW" (**ByVal** lpszPath **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare Function apiPathAddBackslashByString **Lib** "ShlwApi" **Alias** "PathAddBackslashW" (**ByVal** lpszPath **As** String) **As** Long
<http://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa155716%28office.10%29.aspx>
Private Declare Function apiPostMessage **Lib** "User32" **Alias** "PostMessageA" (**ByVal** hWnd **As** Long, **ByVal** wMsg **As** Long, **ByVal** wParam **As** Long, **ByVal** lParam **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare Function apiReadFile **Lib** "Kernel32" (**ByVal** hFile **As** Long, lpBuffer **As** Any, **ByVal** nNumberOfBytesToRead **As** Long, lpNumberOfBytesRead **As** Long, lpOverlapped **As** Any) **As** Long **Private Declare Function** apiRegQueryValue **Lib** "AdvApi32" **Alias** "RegQueryValue" (**ByVal** hKey **As** Long, **ByVal** sValueName **As** String, **ByVal** dwReserved **As** Long, **ByRef** lValueType **As** Long, **ByVal** sValue **As** String, **ByRef** lResultLen **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare Function apiSendMessage **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

```

"SendMessageA" (ByVal hWnd As Long,
ByVal wParam As Long, ByVal lParam As Any) As Long
Private Declare Function apiSetActiveWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"SetActiveWindow" (ByVal hWnd As
Long) As Long
Private Declare Function apiSetCurrentDirectoryA Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"SetCurrentDirectoryA"
(ByVal lpPathName As String) As Long
Private Declare Function apiSetFocus Lib "User32" Alias "SetFocus"
(ByVal hWnd As Long) As Long Private Declare Function
apiSetForegroundWindow Lib "User32" Alias "SetForegroundWindow"
(ByVal
hWnd As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function apiSetLocalTime Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"SetLocalTime" (lpSystem As
SystemTime) As Long
Private Declare Function apiSetWindowPlacement Lib "User32" Alias
"SetWindowPlacement" (ByVal
hWnd As Long, ByRef lpwndpl As winPlacement) As Long
Private Declare Function apiSetWindowPos Lib "User32" Alias
"SetWindowPos" (ByVal hWnd As Long,
ByVal hWndInsertAfter As Long, ByVal X As Long, ByVal Y As Long,
ByVal cx As Long, ByVal cy As
Long, ByVal wFlags As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function apiSetWindowText Lib "User32" Alias
"SetWindowTextA" (ByVal hWnd As
Long, ByVal lpString As String) As Long
Private Declare Function apiShellExecute Lib "Shell32" Alias
"ShellExecuteA" (ByVal hWnd As
Long, ByVal lpOperation As String, ByVal lpFile As String, ByVal
lpParameters As String, ByVal
lpDirectory As String, ByVal nShowCmd As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function apiShowWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"ShowWindow" (ByVal hWnd As Long,
ByVal nCmdShow As Long) As Long
Private Declare Function apiShowWindowAsync Lib "User32" Alias
"ShowWindowAsync" (ByVal hWnd As

```

Long, **ByVal** nCmdShow **As** Long) **As** Long
Private Declare Function apiStrCpy **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias** "lstrcpynA"
 (**ByVal** pDestination **As**
 String, **ByVal** pSource **As** String, **ByVal** iMaxLength **As** Integer) **As** Long
Private Declare Function apiStringLen **Lib** "Kernel32" **Alias** "lstrlenW"
 (**ByVal** lpString **As** Long)
As Long
Private Declare Function apiStrTrimW **Lib** "ShlwApi" **Alias** "StrTrimW" ()
As Boolean **Private Declare Function** apiTerminateProcess **Lib** "Kernel32"
Alias "TerminateProcess" (**ByVal**
 hWnd **As** Long, **ByVal** uExitCode **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Declare Function apiTimeGetTime **Lib** "Winmm" **Alias**
 "timeGetTime" () **As** Long **Private Declare Function** apiVarPtrArray **Lib**
 "MsVbVm50" **Alias** "VarPtr" (Var() **As** Any) **As** Long **Private Declare**
Function apiWaitForSingleObject **Lib** "Kernel32" (**ByVal** hHandle **As**
 Long, **ByVal**

dwMilliseconds **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Type browseInfo *'used by apiBrowseForFolder*
 hOwner **As** Long
 pidlRoot **As** Long
 pszDisplayName **As** String
 lpszTitle **As** String
 ulFlags **As** Long
 lpfn **As** Long
 lParam **As** Long
 iImage **As** Long

End Type

Private Declare Function apiBrowseForFolder **Lib** "Shell32" **Alias**
 "SHBrowseForFolderA" (lpBrowseInfo **As** browseInfo) **As** Long

Private Type CHOOSECOLOR *'used by apiChooseColor;*
<http://support.microsoft.com/kb/153929> and
<http://www.cpearson.com/Excel/Colors.aspx>
 lStructSize **As** Long

hWndOwner **As** Long
hInstance **As** Long
rgbResult **As** Long
lpCustColors **As** String
flags **As** Long
lCustData **As** Long
lpfnHook **As** Long
lpTemplateName **As** String

End Type

Private Declare Function apiChooseColor **Lib** "ComDlg32" **Alias**
"ChooseColorA" (pChoosecolor **As**

CHOOSECOLOR) **As** Long

Private Type FindWindowParameters *'Custom structure for passing in the
parameters in/out of
the hook enumeration function; could use global variables instead, but this is
nicer* strTitle **As** String *'INPUT*

hWnd **As** Long *'OUTPUT*

End Type *'Find a specific window with dynamic caption from a list of
all open windows:*

*[http://www.everythingaccess.com/tutorials.asp?ID=Bring-an-external-
application-window-to-the-foreground](http://www.everythingaccess.com/tutorials.asp?ID=Bring-an-external-application-window-to-the-foreground)*

Private Declare Function apiEnumWindows **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"EnumWindows" (**ByVal** lpEnumFunc **As**

Long, **ByVal** lParam **As** Long) **As** Long

Private Type lastInputInfo *'used by apiGetLastInputInfo, getLastInputTime*
cbSize **As** Long

dwTime **As** Long

End Type

Private Declare Function apiGetLastInputInfo **Lib** "User32" **Alias**

"GetLastInputInfo" (**ByRef** plii

As lastInputInfo) **As** Long

Private Type SystemTime

wYear **As** Integer

wMonth **As** Integer

```

wDayOfWeek As Integer
wDay As Integer
wHour As Integer
wMinute As Integer
wSecond As Integer
wMilliseconds As Integer
End Type
Private Declare Sub apiGetLocalTime Lib "Kernel32" Alias
"GetLocalTime" (lpSystem As
SystemTime)
Private Type pointAPI
X As Long
Y As Long
End Type
Private Type rectAPI
Left_Renamed As Long
Top_Renamed As Long
Right_Renamed As Long
Bottom_Renamed As Long
End Type
Private Type winPlacement
length As Long
flags As Long
showCmd As Long
ptMinPosition As pointAPI
ptMaxPosition As pointAPI
rcNormalPosition As rectAPI
End Type
Private Declare Function apiGetWindowPlacement Lib "User32" Alias
"GetWindowPlacement" (ByVal hWnd As Long, ByRef lpwndpl As
winPlacement) As Long
Private Type winRect
Left As Long
Top As Long
Right As Long
Bottom As Long
End Type

```

```

Private Declare Function apiMoveWindow Lib "User32" Alias
"MoveWindow" (ByVal hWnd As Long, xLeft As Long, ByVal yTop As
Long, wWidth As Long, ByVal hHeight As Long, ByVal repaint As Long)
As Long
#Else ' Win16 = True
#End If

```

Chapter 43: Automation or Using other applications Libraries

If you use the objects in other applications as part of your Visual Basic application, you may want to establish a reference to the object libraries of those applications. This Documentation provides a list, sources and examples of how to use libraries of different softwares, like Windows Shell, Internet Explorer, XML HttpRequest, and others.

Section 43.1: VBScript Regular Expressions

```

Set createVBScriptRegExpObject = CreateObject("vbscript.RegExp")

```

Tools> References> Microsoft VBScript Regular Expressions #.#
 Associated DLL: VBScript.dll
 Source: Internet Explorer 1.0 and 5.5

MSDN-Microsoft Beefs Up VBScript with Regular Expressions
 MSDN-Regular Expression Syntax (Scripting)
[experts-exchange - Using Regular Expressions in Visual Basic for Applications and Visual Basic 6](#)
[How to use Regular Expressions \(Regex\) in Microsoft Excel both in-cell and loops on SO.](#)
[regular-expressions.info/vbscript](#)
[regular-expressions.info/vbscriptexample](#)
[WIKI-Regular expression](#)

Code

You can use this functions to get RegEx results, concatenate all matches (if more than 1) into 1 string, and display result in excel cell.

```

Public Function getRegexResult(ByVal SourceString As String, Optional
ByVal RegExPattern As String = "\d+", _

```


Optional ByVal isGlobalSearch **As Boolean** = **True**, **Optional ByVal** isCaseSensitive **As Boolean** = **False**, **Optional ByVal** Delimiter **As String** = ";" **As String**

Static RegExObject **As Object**

If RegExObject **Is Nothing Then**

Set RegExObject = createVBScriptRegExObject

End If

getRegExResult =

removeLeadingDelimiter(concatObjectItems(getRegExMatches(RegExObject SourceString, RegExPattern, isGlobalSearch, isCaseSensitive), Delimiter), Delimiter)

End Function

Private Function getRegExMatches(**ByRef** RegExObj **As Object**, _
ByVal SourceString **As String**, **ByVal** RegExPattern **As String**, **ByVal** isGlobalSearch **As Boolean**,
ByVal isCaseSensitive **As Boolean**) **As Object**

With RegExObj

.**Global** = isGlobalSearch

.IgnoreCase = **Not** (isCaseSensitive) *'it is more user friendly to use positive meaning of*

argument, like isCaseSensitive, than to use negative IgnoreCase

.Pattern = RegExPattern

Set getRegExMatches = .Execute(SourceString)

End With

End Function

Private Function concatObjectItems(**ByRef** Obj **As Object**, **Optional ByVal** DelimiterCustom **As String** = ";") **As String**

Dim ObjElement **As Variant**

For Each ObjElement **In** Obj

concatObjectItems = concatObjectItems & DelimiterCustom & ObjElement.Value **Next**

End Function


```
Public Function removeLeadingDelimiter(ByVal SourceString As String,  
ByVal Delimiter As String) As String
```

```
If Left$(SourceString, Len(Delimiter)) = Delimiter Then  
removeLeadingDelimiter = Mid$(SourceString, Len(Delimiter) + 1)  
End If  
End Function
```

```
Private Function createVBScriptRegExpObject() As Object  
Set createVBScriptRegExpObject = CreateObject("vbscript.RegExp") 'ex.:  
createVBScriptRegExpObject.Pattern  
End Function
```

Section 43.2: Scripting File System Object

```
Set createScriptingFileSystemObject =  
CreateObject("Scripting.FileSystemObject")
```

Tools> References> Microsoft Scripting Runtime
Associated DLL: ScrRun.dll
Source: Windows OS

MSDN-Accessing Files with FileSystemObject

The File System Object (FSO) model provides an object-based tool for working with folders and files. It allows you to use the familiar object.method syntax with a rich set of properties, methods, and events to process folders and files. You can also employ the traditional Visual Basic statements and commands.

The FSO model gives your application the ability to create, alter, move, and delete folders, or to determine if and where particular folders exist. It also enables you to get information about folders, such as their names and the date they were created or last modified.

[MSDN-FileSystemObject topics](#) : "...explain the concept of the *FileSystemObject* and how to use it." [exceltrickFileSystemObject in VBA – Explained](#)

Scripting.FileSystemObject

Section 43.3: Scripting Dictionary object

```
Set dict = CreateObject("Scripting.Dictionary")
```

Tools> References> Microsoft Scripting Runtime
Associated DLL: ScrRun.dll
Source: Windows OS

Scripting.Dictionary object
MSDN-Dictionary Object

Section 43.4: Internet Explorer Object

```
Set createInternetExplorerObject =  
CreateObject("InternetExplorer.Application")
```

Tools> References> Microsoft Internet Controls
Associated DLL: ieframe.dll
Source: Internet Explorer Browser

MSDN-InternetExplorer object

Controls an instance of Windows Internet Explorer through automation.

Internet Explorer Object Basic Members

The code below should introduce how the IE object works and how to manipulate it through VBA. I recommend stepping through it, otherwise it might error out during multiple navigations.

```
Sub IEGetToKnow()  
Dim IE As InternetExplorer 'Reference to Microsoft Internet Controls Set IE  
= New InternetExplorer
```

```
With IE
```

```
.Visible = True 'Sets or gets a value that indicates whether the object is  
visible or hidden.
```

```
'Navigation
```

`.Navigate2 "http://www.example.com"` *'Navigates the browser to a location that might not be expressed as a URL, such as a PIDL for an entity in the Windows Shell namespace.'*

`Debug.Print .Busy` *'Gets a value that indicates whether the object is engaged in a navigation or downloading operation.'*

`Debug.Print .ReadyState` *'Gets the ready state of the object.'*

`.Navigate2 "http://www.example.com/2"`

`.GoBack` *'Navigates backward one item in the history list'*

`.GoForward` *'Navigates forward one item in the history list.'*

`.GoHome` *'Navigates to the current home or start page.'*

`.Stop` *'Cancels a pending navigation or download, and stops dynamic page elements, such as background sounds and animations.'*

`.Refresh` *'Reloads the file that is currently displayed in the object.'*

`Debug.Print .Silent` *'Sets or gets a value that indicates whether the object can display dialog boxes.'*

`Debug.Print .Type` *'Gets the user type name of the contained document object.'*

`Debug.Print .Top` *'Sets or gets the coordinate of the top edge of the object.'*

`Debug.Print .Left` *'Sets or gets the coordinate of the left edge of the object.'*

`Debug.Print .Height` *'Sets or gets the height of the object.'*

`Debug.Print .Width` *'Sets or gets the width of the object.'*

End With

`IE.Quit` *'close the application window* **End Sub**

Web Scraping

The most common thing to do with IE is to scrape some information of a website, or to fill a website form and submit information. We will look at how to do it.

Let us consider example.com source code:

```
<!doctype html>
```

```
<html>
```

```
<head>
```

```
<title>Example Domain</title>
```

```
<meta charset="utf-8" />
```

```
<meta http-equiv="Content-type" content="text/html; charset=utf-8" />
```

```
<meta name="viewport" content="width=device-width, initial-scale=1" />
<style ... </style>
```

```
</head>
```

```
<body>
```

```
<div>
```

```
<h1>Example Domain</h1>
```

```
<p>This domain is established to be used for illustrative examples in
documents. You
```

may use this

domain in examples without prior coordination or asking for permission.</p>

```
<p><a href="http://www.iana.org/domains/example">More information...
```

```
</a></p>
```

```
</div>
```

```
</body>
```

```
</html>
```

We can use code like below to get and set information:

```
Sub IEWebScrape1()
```

```
Dim IE As InternetExplorer 'Reference to Microsoft Internet Controls
Set IE = New InternetExplorer
```

```
With IE
```

```
.Visible = True
```

```
.Navigate2 "http://www.example.com"
```

'we add a loop to be sure the website is loaded and ready.

'Does not work consistently. Cannot be relied upon.

```
Do While .Busy = True Or .ReadyState <> READYSTATE_COMPLETE
```

```
'Equivalent = .ReadyState <> 4
```

' DoEvents - worth considering. Know implications before you use it.

*Application.Wait (Now + TimeValue("00:00:01")) 'Wait 1 second, then
check again. Loop*

'Print info in immediate window

With .Document *'the source code HTML "below" the displayed page.*

Stop *'VBE Stop. Continue line by line to see what happens.*

```
Debug.Print .GetElementsByTagName("title")(0).innerHTML 'prints "Example Domain"
Debug.Print .GetElementsByTagName("h1")(0).innerHTML 'prints "Example Domain"
Debug.Print .GetElementsByTagName("p")(0).innerHTML 'prints "This domain is
```

established..."

```
Debug.Print .GetElementsByTagName("p")(1).innerHTML 'prints "<a href="http://www.iana.org/domains/example">More information...</a>"
```

```
Debug.Print .GetElementsByTagName("p")(1).innerText 'prints "More information..."
```

```
Debug.Print .GetElementsByTagName("a")(0).innerText 'prints "More information..."
```

'We can change the locally displayed website. Don't worry about breaking the

site. .GetElementsByTagName("title")(0).innerHTML = "Psst, scraping..."

.GetElementsByTagName("h1")(0).innerHTML = "Let me try something fishy." *'You have just*

changed the local HTML of the site.

```
.GetElementsByTagName("p")(0).innerHTML = "Lorem ipsum..... The End"
.GetElementsByTagName("a")(0).innerText = "iana.org"
```

End With *'document*

.Quit *'close the application window*

End With *'ie*

End Sub

What is going on? The key player here is the **.Document**, that is the HTML source code. We can apply some queries to get the Collections or Object we want.

For example the IE.Document.GetElementsByTagName("title")(0).innerHTML. GetElementsByTagName returns a **Collection** of HTML Elements, that have the "title" tag. There is only one such tag in the source code. The **Collection** is 0-based. So to get the first element we add (0). Now, in our case, we want only the innerHtml (a String), not the Element Object

itself. So we specify the property we want.

Click

To follow a link on a site, we can use multiple methods:

```
Sub IEGoToPlaces()
```

```
Dim IE As InternetExplorer 'Reference to Microsoft Internet Controls Set IE  
= New InternetExplorer
```

```
With IE
```

```
.Visible = True
```

```
.Navigate2 "http://www.example.com"
```

```
Stop 'VBE Stop. Continue line by line to see what happens.
```

```
'Click
```

```
.Document.GetElementsByTagName("a")(0).Click Stop 'VBE Stop.
```

```
'Return Back
```

```
.GoBack
```

```
Stop 'VBE Stop.
```

```
'Navigate using the href attribute in the <a> tag, or "link" .Navigate2
```

```
.Document.GetElementsByTagName("a")(0).href Stop 'VBE Stop.
```

```
.Quit 'close the application window End With
```

```
End Sub
```

Microsoft HTML Object Library or IE Best friend

To get the most out of the HTML that gets loaded into the IE, you can (or should) use another Library, i.e. *Microsoft HTML Object Library*. More about this in another example.

IE Main issues

The main issue with IE is verifying that the page is done loading and is ready to be interacted with. The **Do While... Loop** helps, but is not reliable.

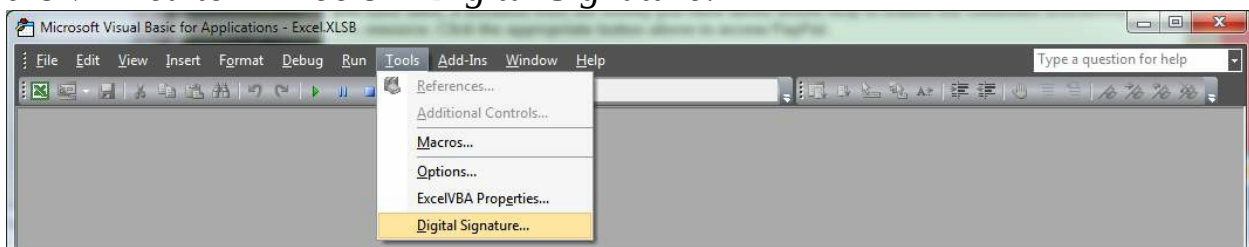
Also, using IE just to scrape HTML content is OVERKILL. Why? Because the Browser is meant for browsing, i.e. displaying the web page with all the CSS, JavaScripts, Pictures, Popups, etc. If you only need the raw data, consider different approach. E.g. using [XML HTTPRequest](#). More about this

in another example.

Chapter 44: Macro security and signing of VBA-projects/-modules

Section 44.1: Create a valid digital self-signed certificate **SELF CERT.EXE**

To run macros and maintain the security Office applications provide against malicious code, it is necessary to digitally sign the VBAProject.OTM from the *VBA editor* > *Tools* > *Digital Signature*.



Office comes with a utility to create a self-signed digital certificate that you can employ on the PC to sign your projects.

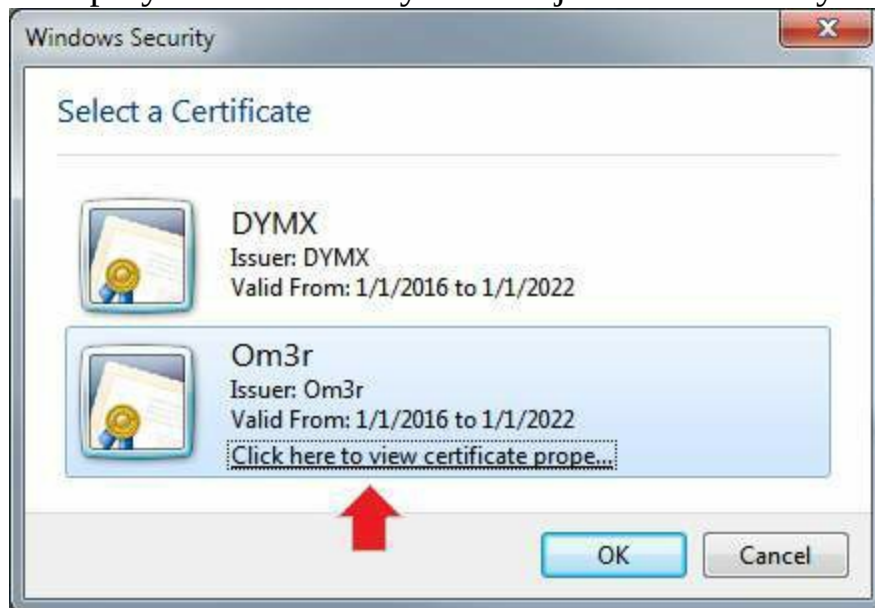
This utility **SELF CERT.EXE** is in the Office program folder, Click on Digital Certificate for VBA Projects to open the certificate *wizard*. In the dialog enter a suitable name for the certificate and click OK.



If all goes well you will see a confirmation:

You can now close the **SELF CERT** wizard and turn your attention to the certificate you have created.

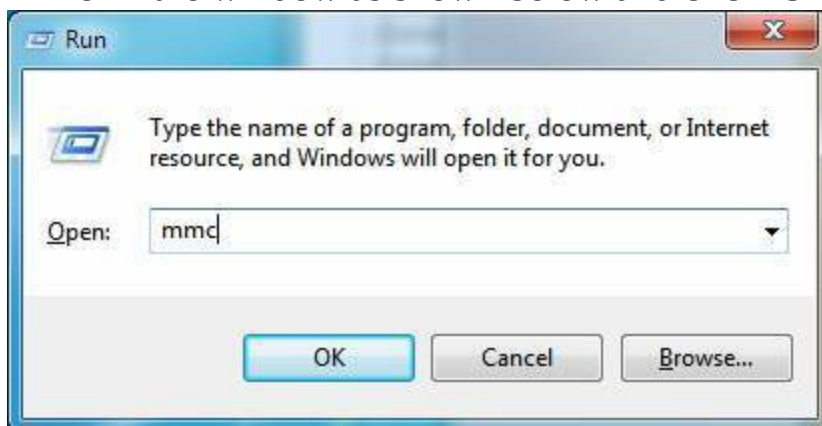
If you try to employ the certificate you have just created and you check its



properties. You will see that the certificate is not trusted and the reason is indicated in the dialog.

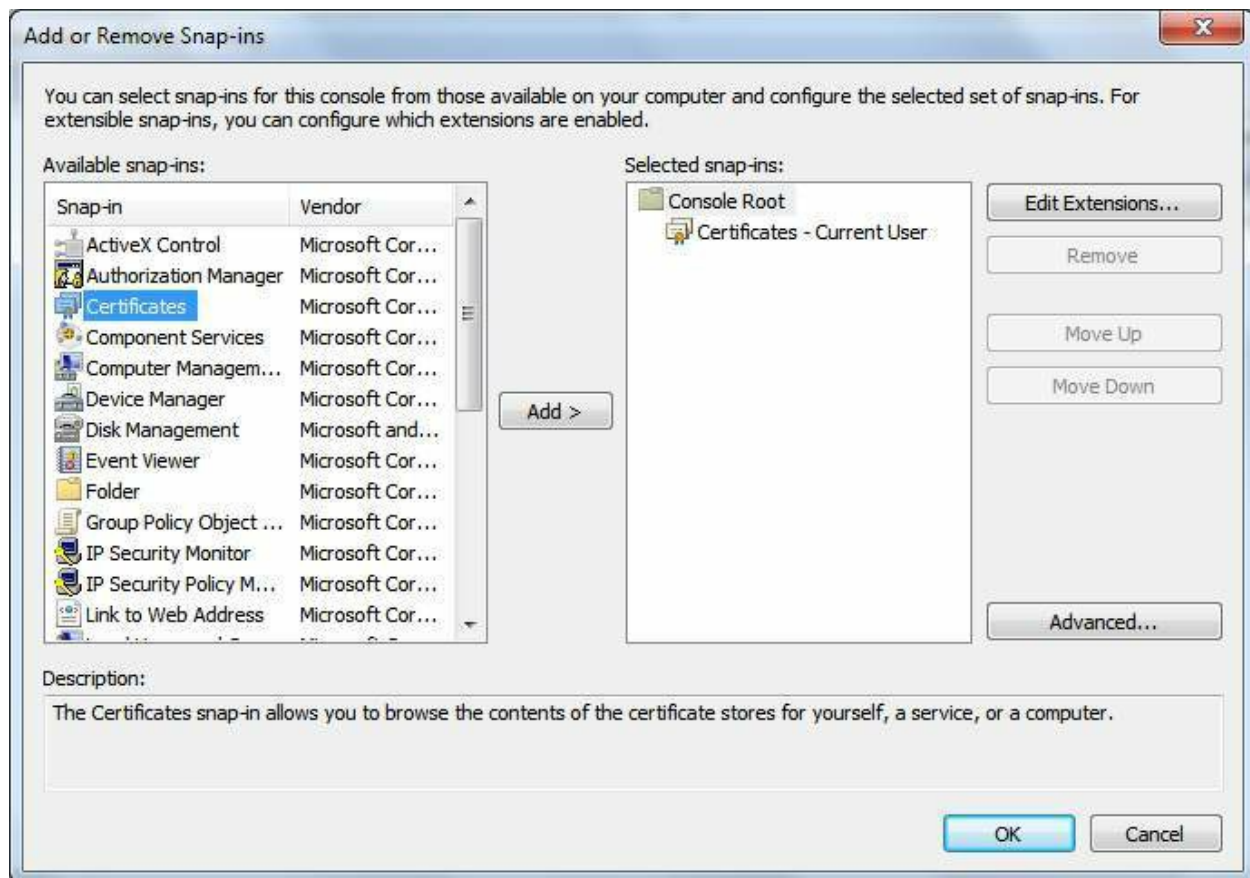
The certificate has been created in the Current User > Personal > Certificates store. It needs to go in Local Computer > Trusted Root Certificate Authorities > Certificates store, so you need to export from the former and import to the latter.

Pressing the Windows **Key+R** which will open the 'Run' Window. then Enter 'mmc' in the window as shown below and click 'OK'.

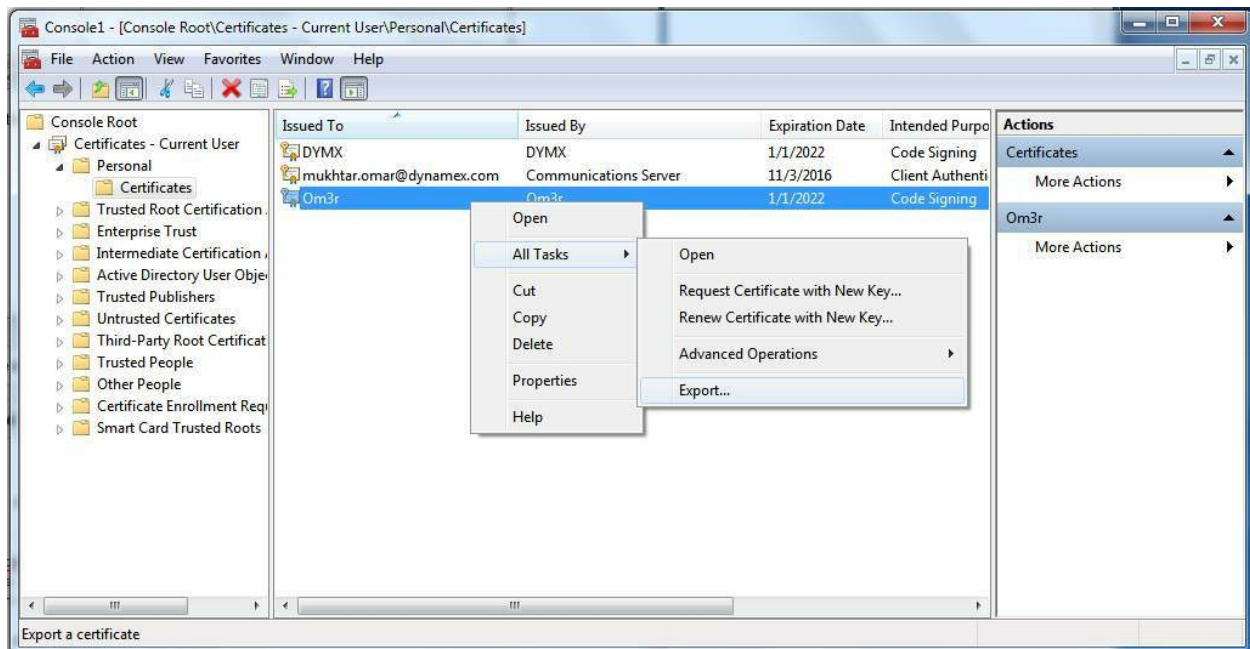


The Microsoft Management Console will open and look like the following. From the File menu, select Add/Remove Snap-in... Then from the ensuing

dialog, double click Certificates and then click OK



Expand the dropdown in the left window for *Certificates - Current User* and select certificates as shown below. The center panel will then show the certificates in that location, which will include the certificate you created earlier: Right click the certificate and select All Tasks > Export:



Export Wizard



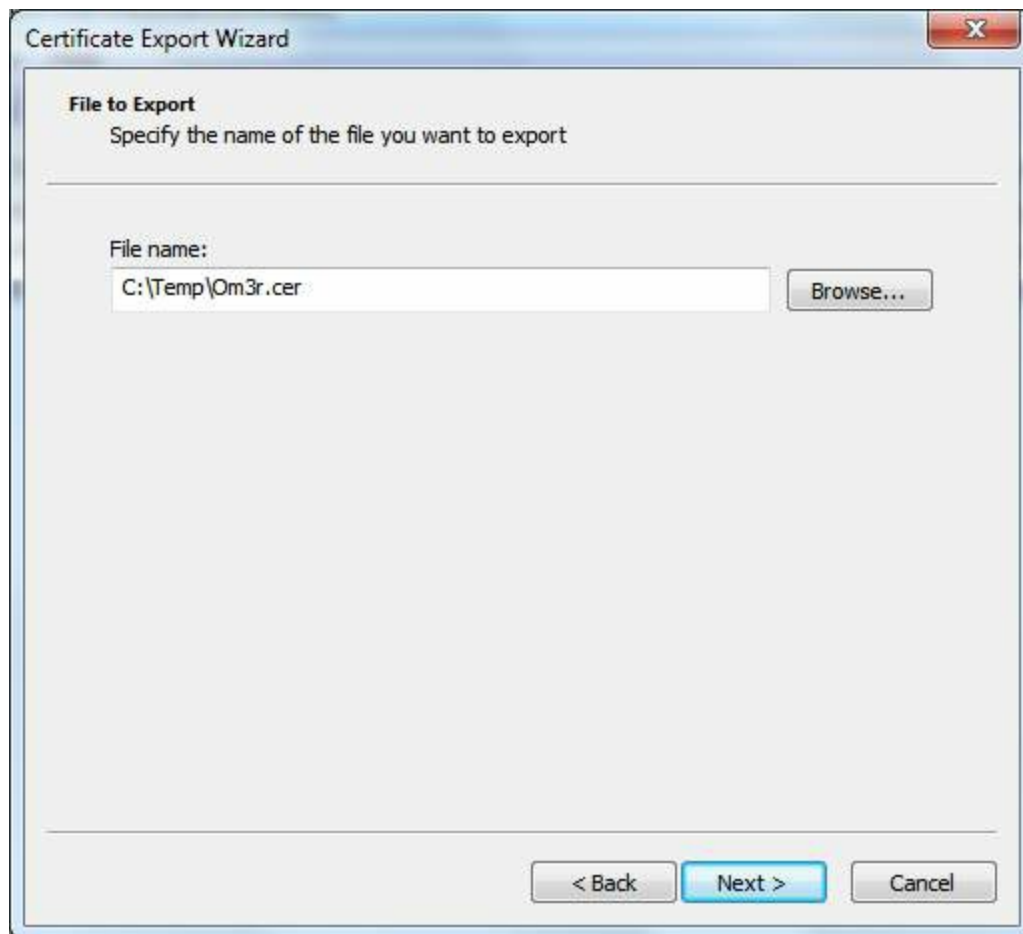
Click Next



the Only one pre-selected option will be available, so click 'Next' again:

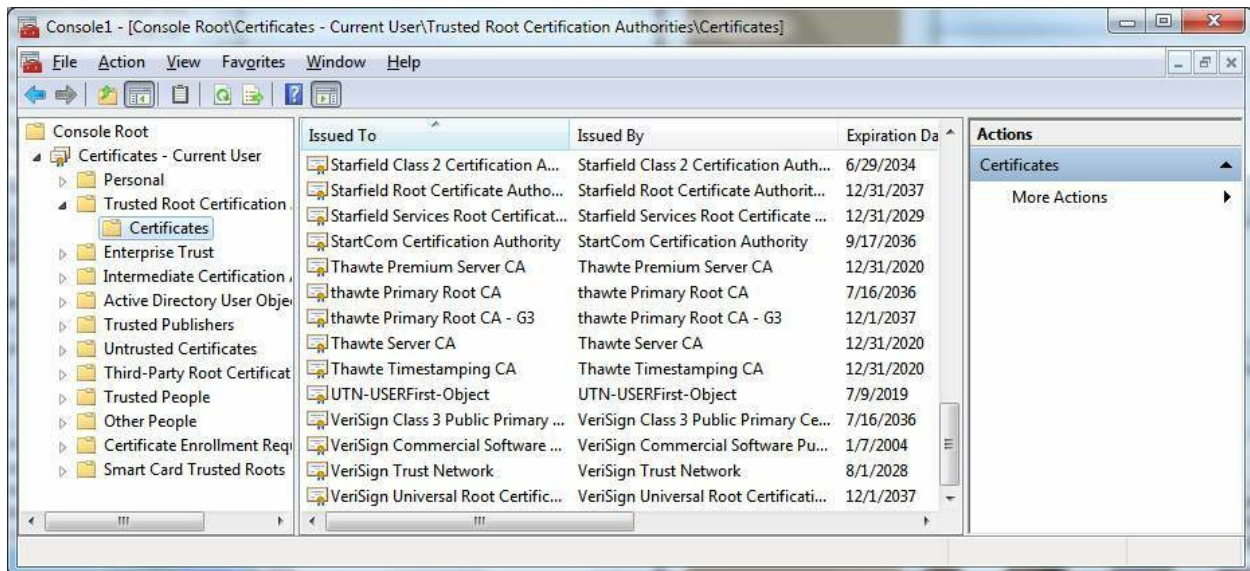


The top item will already be pre-selected. Click Next again and choose a name and location to save the exported certificate.

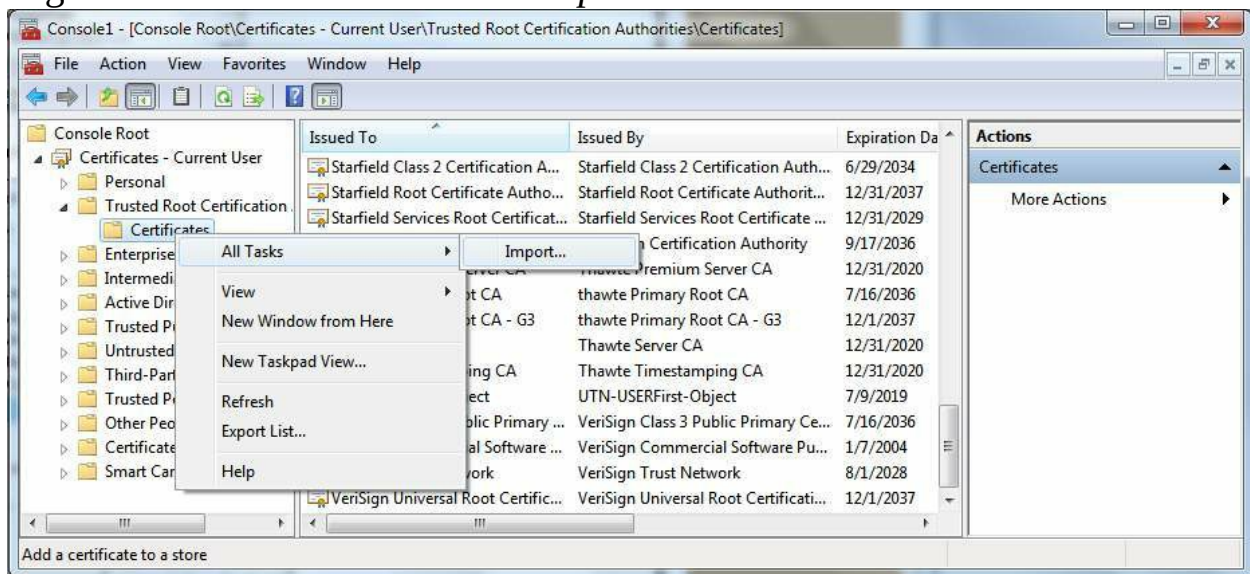


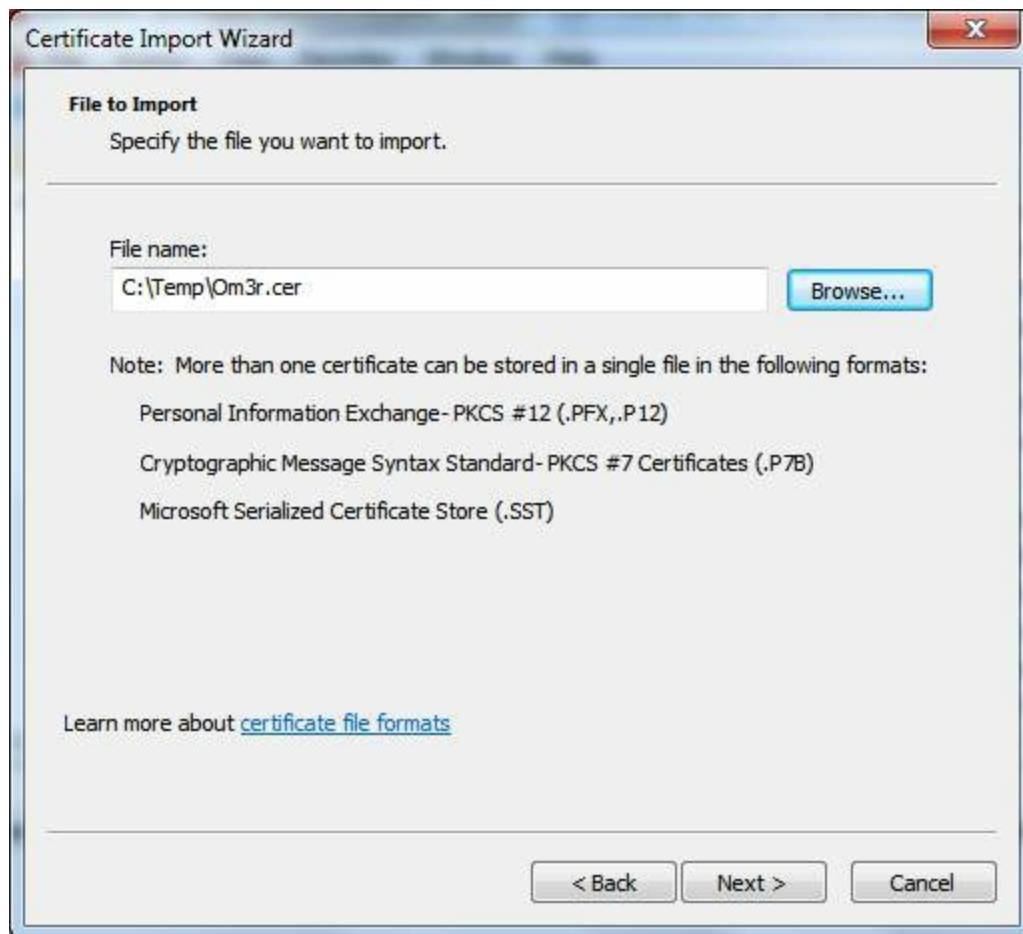
Click Next again to save the certificate

Once focus is returned to the Management Console.
Expand the *Certificates* menu and from the Trusted Root Certification
Authorities menu, select *Certificates*.

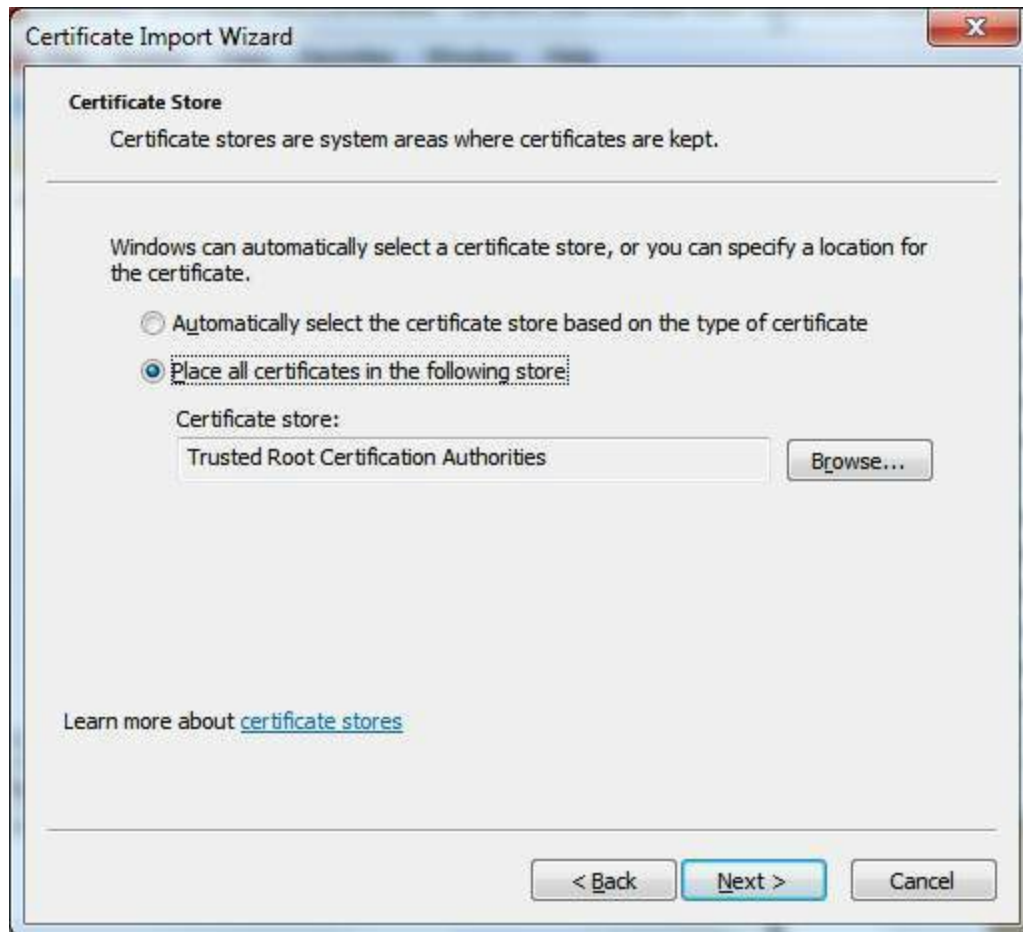


Right click. Select *All Tasks* and *Import*





Click next
and Save to the *Trusted Root Certification Authorities* store:



Then Next > Finish, now close the Console.

If you now use the certificate and check its properties, you will see that it is a trusted certificate and you can use it to sign your project:



Chapter 45: VBA Run-Time Errors

Code that compiles can still run into errors, at run-time. This topic lists the most common ones, their causes, and how to avoid them.

Section 45.1: Run-time error '6': Overflow

Incorrect code

```
Sub DoSomething()  
Dim row As Integer  
For row = 1 To 100000
```

```
'do stuff
```

```
Next
```

```
End Sub
```

Why doesn't this work?

The **Integer** data type is a 16-bit signed integer with a maximum value of 32,767; assigning it to anything larger than that will *overflow* the type and raise this error.

Correct code

```
Sub DoSomething()
```

```
Dim row As Long
```

```
For row = 1 To 100000
```

```
'do stuff
```

```
Next
```

```
End Sub
```

Why does this work?

By using a **Long** (32-bit) integer instead, we can now make a loop that iterates more than 32,767 times without overflowing the counter variable's type.

Other notes See Data Types and Limits for more information.

Section 45.2: Run-time error '9': Subscript out of range

Incorrect code

```
Sub DoSomething()
```

```
Dim foo(1 To 10)
```

```
Dim i As Long
```

```
For i = 1 To 100
```

```
foo(i) = i
```

```
Next
```

```
End Sub
```

Why doesn't this work?

foo is an array that contains 10 items. When the i loop counter reaches a value of 11, foo(i) is *out of range*. This error occurs whenever an array or

collection is accessed with an index that doesn't exist in that array or collection.

Correct code

```
Sub DoSomething() Dim foo(1 To 10) Dim i As Long
For i = LBound(foo) To UBound(foo) foo(i) = i
Next
End Sub
```

Why does this work?

Use LBound and UBound functions to determine the lower and upper boundaries of an array, respectively.

Other notes

When the index is a string, e.g. ThisWorkbook.Worksheets("I don't exist"), this error means the supplied name doesn't exist in the queried collection. The actual error is implementation-specific though; Collection will raise run-time error 5 "Invalid procedure call or argument" instead:

```
Sub RaisesRunTimeError5() Dim foo As New Collection foo.Add "foo",
"foo" Debug.Print foo("bar")
End Sub
```

Section 45.3: Run-time error '13': Type mismatch

Incorrect code

```
Public Sub DoSomething()
DoSomethingElse "42?"
End Sub

Private Sub DoSomethingElse(foo As Date) ' Debug.Print
MonthName(Month(foo)) End Sub
```

Why doesn't this work?

VBA is trying really hard to convert the "42?" argument into a Date value.

When it fails, the call to DoSomethingElse cannot be executed, because VBA doesn't know what date to pass, so it raises run-time error 13 *type mismatch*, because the type of the argument doesn't match the expected type (and can't be implicitly converted either).

Correct code

```
Public Sub DoSomething() DoSomethingElse Now  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub DoSomethingElse(foo As Date) ' Debug.Print  
MonthName(Month(foo)) End Sub
```

Why does this work?

By passing a **Date** argument to a procedure that expects a **Date** parameter, the call can succeed.

Section 45.4: Run-time error '91': Object variable or With block variable not set

Incorrect code

```
Sub DoSomething()
```

```
Dim foo As Collection With foo  
.Add "ABC"  
.Add "XYZ"  
End With  
End Sub
```

Why doesn't this work?

Object variables hold a *reference*, and references need to be set using the **Set** keyword. This error occurs whenever a member call is made on an object whose reference is **Nothing**. In this case foo is a Collection reference, but it's not initialized, so the reference contains **Nothing** - and we can't call .Add on **Nothing**.

Correct code

```

Sub DoSomething()
Dim foo As Collection Set foo = New Collection With foo

.Add "ABC"
.Add "XYZ"
End With
End Sub

```

Why does this work?

By assigning the object variable a valid reference using the **Set** keyword, the .Add calls succeed.

Other notes

Often, a function or property can return an object reference - a common example is Excel's Range.Find method, which returns a Range object:

```

Dim resultRow As Long
resultRow = SomeSheet.Cells.Find("Something").Row

```

However the function can very well return **Nothing** (if the search term isn't found), so it's likely that the chained .Row member call fails. Before calling object members, verify that the reference is set with a **If Not xxxx Is Nothing** condition:

```

Dim result As Range
Set result = SomeSheet.Cells.Find("Something")
Dim resultRow As Long
If Not result Is Nothing Then resultRow = result.Row

```

Section 45.5: Run-time error '20': Resume without error

Incorrect code

```

Sub DoSomething()
On Error GoTo CleanFail
DoSomethingElse

CleanFail:
Debug.Print Err.Number Resume Next

End Sub

```

Why doesn't this work?

If the DoSomethingElse procedure raises an error, execution jumps to the CleanFail line label, prints the error number, and the **Resume Next** instruction jumps back to the instruction that immediately follows the line where the error occurred, which in this case is the Debug.Print instruction: the error-handling subroutine is executing without an error context, and when the **Resume Next** instruction is reached, run-time error 20 is raised because there is nowhere to resume to.

Correct Code

```
Sub DoSomething()  
On Error GoTo CleanFail DoSomethingElse  
  
Exit Sub  
CleanFail:  
Debug.Print Err.Number  
Resume Next  
End Sub
```

Why does this work?

By introducing an **Exit Sub** instruction before the CleanFail line label, we have segregated the CleanFail errorhandling subroutine from the rest of the procedure body - the only way to execute the error-handling subroutine is via an **On Error** jump; therefore, no execution path reaches the **Resume** instruction outside of an error context, which avoids run-time error 20.

Other notes

This is very similar to Run-time error '3': Return without GoSub; in both situations, the solution is to ensure that the *normal execution path* cannot enter a sub-routine (identified by a line label) without an explicit jump (assuming **On Error GoTo** is considered an *explicit jump*).

Section 45.6: Run-time error '3': Return without GoSub

Incorrect Code

```
Sub DoSomething()  
GoSub DoThis  
DoThis:  
Debug.Print "Hi!"  
Return  
End Sub
```

Why doesn't this work?

Execution enters the DoSomething procedure, jumps to the DoThis label, prints "Hi!" to the debug output, *returns* to the instruction immediately after the **GoSub** call, prints "Hi!" again, and then encounters a **Return** statement, but there's nowhere to *return* to now, because we didn't get here with a **GoSub** statement.

Correct Code

```
Sub DoSomething() GoSub DoThis  
Exit Sub
```

```
DoThis:  
Debug.Print "Hi!" Return
```

```
End Sub
```

Why does this work?

By introducing an **Exit Sub** instruction *before* the DoThis line label, we have segregated the DoThis subroutine from the rest of the procedure body - the only way to execute the DoThis subroutine is via the **GoSub** jump.

Other notes

GoSub/Return is deprecated, and should be avoided in favor of actual procedure calls. A procedure should not contain subroutines, other than error handlers.

This is very similar to Run-time error '20': Resume without error; in both situations, the solution is to ensure that the *normal execution path* cannot enter a sub-routine (identified by a line label) without an explicit jump (assuming **On Error GoTo** is considered an *explicit jump*).

Chapter 46: Error Handling

Section 46.1: Avoiding error conditions

When a runtime error occurs, good code should handle it. The best error handling strategy is to write code that checks for error conditions and simply avoids executing code that results in a runtime error.

One key element in reducing runtime errors, is writing small procedures that *do one thing*. The fewer reasons procedures have to fail, the easier the code as a whole is to debug.

Avoiding runtime error 91 - Object or With block variable not set:

This error will be raised when an object is used before its reference is assigned. One might have a procedure that receives an object parameter:

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByVal target As Worksheet)
    Debug.Print target.Name
End Sub
```

If target isn't assigned a reference, the above code will raise an error that is easily avoided by checking if the object contains an actual object reference:

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByVal target As Worksheet)
If target Is Nothing Then Exit Sub
    Debug.Print target.Name
```

End Sub

If target isn't assigned a reference, then the unassigned reference is never used, and no error occurs.

This way of early-exiting a procedure when one or more parameter isn't valid, is called a *guard clause*.

Avoiding runtime error 9 - Subscript out of range:

This error is raised when an array is accessed outside of its boundaries.

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByVal index As Integer)
    Debug.Print ActiveWorkbook.Worksheets(index)
End Sub
```

Given an index greater than the number of worksheets in the ActiveWorkbook, the above code will raise a runtime error. A simple guard

clause can avoid that:

```
Private Sub DoSomething(ByVal index As Integer)  
If index > ActiveWorkbook.Worksheets.Count Or index <= 0 Then Exit  
Sub  
Debug.Print ActiveWorkbook.Worksheets(index)  
  
End Sub
```

Most runtime errors can be avoided by carefully verifying the values we're using *before* we use them, and branching on another execution path accordingly using a simple If statement - in guard clauses that makes no assumptions and validates a procedure's parameters, or even in the body of larger procedures.

Section 46.2: Custom Errors

Often when writing a specialized class, you'll want it to raise its own specific errors, and you'll want a clean way for user/calling code to handle these custom errors. A neat way to achieve this is by defining a dedicated **Enum** type:

```
Option Explicit  
Public Enum FoobarError  
Err_FooWasNotBarred = vbObjectError + 1024 Err_BarNotInitialized  
Err_SomethingElseHappened  
End Enum
```

Using the vbObjectError built-in constant ensures the custom error codes don't overlap with reserved/existing error codes. Only the first enum value needs to be explicitly specified, for the underlying value of each **Enum** member is 1 greater than the previous member, so the underlying value of Err_BarNotInitialized is implicitly vbObjectError + 1025.

Raising your own runtime errors

A runtime error can be raised using the Err.Raise statement, so the custom Err_FooWasNotBarred error can be raised as follows:

```
Err.Raise Err_FooWasNotBarred
```

The Err.Raise method can also take custom Description and Source parameters - for this reason it's a good idea to also define constants to hold each custom error's description:

```
Private Const Msg_FooWasNotBarred As String = "The foo was not  
barred." Private Const Msg_BarNotInitialized As String = "The bar was not  
initialized."
```

And then create a dedicated private method to raise each error:

```
Private Sub OnFooWasNotBarredError(ByVal source As String) Err.Raise  
Err_FooWasNotBarred, source, Msg_FooWasNotBarred  
End Sub
```

```
Private Sub OnBarNotInitializedError(ByVal source As String) Err.Raise  
Err_BarNotInitialized, source, Msg_BarNotInitialized  
End Sub
```

The class' implementation can then simply call these specialized procedures to raise the error:

```
Public Sub DoSomething()  
'raises the custom 'BarNotInitialized' error with "DoSomething" as the  
source: If Me.Bar Is Nothing Then OnBarNotInitializedError  
"DoSomething" '...
```

```
End Sub
```

The client code can then handle Err_BarNotInitialized as it would any other error, inside its own error-handling subroutine.

Note: the legacy **Error** keyword can also be used in place of Err.Raise, but it's obsolete/deprecated.

Section 46.3: Resume keyword

An error-handling subroutine will either:

run to the end of the procedure, in which case execution resumes in the calling procedure. or, use the **Resume** keyword to *resume* execution inside the same procedure. The **Resume** keyword should only ever be used inside an error handling subroutine, because if VBA encounters **Resume** without

being in an error state, runtime error 20 "Resume without error" is raised.

There are several ways an error-handling subroutine may use the **Resume** keyword:

Resume used alone, execution continues **on the statement that caused the error**. If the error isn't *actually* handled before doing that, then the same error will be raised again, and execution might enter an infinite loop.

Resume Next continues execution **on the statement immediately following** the statement that caused the error. If the error isn't *actually* handled before doing that, then execution is permitted to continue with potentially invalid data, which may result in logical errors and unexpected behavior.

Resume [line label] continues execution **at the specified line label** (or line number, if you're using legacy style line numbers). This would typically allow executing some cleanup code before cleanly exiting the procedure, such as ensuring a database connection is closed before returning to the caller.

On Error Resume Next

The **On Error** statement itself can use the **Resume** keyword to instruct the VBA runtime to effectively **ignore all errors**.

*If the error isn't **actually handled** before doing that, then execution is permitted to continue with potentially invalid data, which may result in **logical errors and unexpected behavior**.*

The emphasis above cannot be emphasized enough. **On Error Resume Next effectively ignores all errors and shoves them under the carpet**. A program that blows up with a runtime error given invalid input is a better program than one that keeps running with unknown/unintended data - be it only because the bug is much more easily identifiable. **On Error Resume Next** can easily **hide bugs**.

The **On Error** statement is procedure-scoped - that's why there should *normally* be only **one**, single such **On Error** statement in a given procedure.

However *sometimes* an error condition can't quite be avoided, and jumping to an error-handling subroutine only to **Resume Next** just doesn't feel right. In this specific case, the known-to-possibly-fail statement can be **wrapped** between two **On Error** statements:

On Error Resume Next

[possibly-failing statement] Err.Clear *'resets current error* **On Error GoTo 0**

The **On Error GoTo 0** instruction resets error handling in the current procedure, such that any further instruction causing a runtime error *would be unhandled within that procedure* and instead passed up the call stack until it is caught by an active error handler. If there is no active error handler in the call stack, it will be treated as an unhandled exception.

Public Sub Caller()

On Error GoTo Handler

Callee

Exit Sub Handler:

Debug.Print "Error " & Err.Number & " in Caller." **End Sub**

Public Sub Callee()

On Error GoTo Handler

Err.Raise 1 *'This will be handled by the Callee handler. On Error GoTo 0*
'After this statement, errors are passed up the stack. Err.Raise 2 *'This will be handled by the Caller handler.*

Exit Sub

Handler:

Debug.Print "Error " & Err.Number & " in Callee."

Resume Next

End Sub

Section 46.4: On Error statement

Even with *guard clauses*, one cannot realistically *always* account for all possible error conditions that could be raised in the body of a procedure. The **On Error GoTo** statement instructs VBA to jump to a *line label* and enter "error handling mode" whenever an unexpected error occurs at runtime. After handling an error, code can *resume* back into "normal" execution using the **Resume** keyword.

Line labels denote *subroutines*: because subroutines originate from legacy BASIC code and uses **GoTo** and **GoSub** jumps and **Return** statements to

jump back to the "main" routine, it's fairly easy to write hard-to-follow *spaghetti code* if things aren't rigorously structured. For this reason, it's best that:

a procedure has **one and only one** error-handling subroutine the error-handling subroutine **only ever runs in an error state**

This means a procedure that handles its errors, should be structured like this:

```
Private Sub DoSomething() On Error GoTo CleanFail  
'procedure code here
```

CleanExit:

```
'cleanup code here Exit Sub
```

CleanFail:

```
'error-handling code here Resume CleanExit
```

End Sub

Error Handling Strategies

Sometimes you want to handle different errors with different actions. In that case you will inspect the global Err object, which will contain information about the error that was raised - and act accordingly:

CleanExit: **Exit Sub**

CleanFail:

```
Select Case Err.Number
```

```
Case 9
```

```
MsgBox "Specified number doesn't exist. Please try again.", vbExclamation
```

```
Resume
```

```
Case 91
```

```
'woah there, this shouldn't be happening.
```

```
Stop 'execution will break here
```

```
Resume 'hit F8 to jump to the line that raised the error
```

```
Case Else
```

```
MsgBox "An unexpected error has occurred:" & vbNewLine &  
Err.Description, vbCritical
```

```
Resume CleanExit
```

```
End Select
```

```
End Sub
```

As a general guideline, consider turning on the error handling for entire subroutine or function, and handle all the errors that may occur within its scope. If you need to only handle errors in the small section of the code -turn error handling on and off at the same level:

```
Private Sub DoSomething(CheckValue as Long)
```

```
If CheckValue = 0 Then
```

```
On Error GoTo ErrorHandler ' turn error handling on ' code that may result in error
```

```
On Error GoTo 0 ' turn error handling off - same level
```

```
End If
```

```
CleanExit: Exit Sub
```

```
ErrorHandler:
```

```
' error handling code here
```

```
' do not turn off error handling here Resume
```

```
End Sub
```

Line numbers

VBA supports legacy-style (e.g. QBASIC) line numbers. The `Erl` hidden property can be used to identify the line number that raised the last error. If you're not using line numbers, `Erl` will only ever return 0.

```
Sub DoSomething()
```

```
10 On Error GoTo 50
```

```
20 Debug.Print 42 / 0
```

```
30 Exit Sub
```

```
40
```

```
50 Debug.Print "Error raised on line " & Erl ' returns 20 End Sub
```

If you *are* using line numbers, but not consistently, then `Erl` will return *the last line number before the instruction that raised the error*.

```
Sub DoSomething() 10 On Error GoTo 50 Debug.Print 42 / 0 30 Exit Sub
```

```
50 Debug.Print "Error raised on line " & Erl ' returns 10 End Sub
```

Keep in mind that `Erl` also only has `Integer` precision, and will silently overflow. This means that line numbers outside of the integer range will give

incorrect results:

```
Sub DoSomething()  
99997 On Error GoTo 99999  
99998 Debug.Print 42 / 0  
99999  
Debug.Print Erl 'Prints 34462 End Sub
```

The line number isn't quite as relevant as the statement that caused the error, and numbering lines quickly becomes tedious and not quite maintenance-friendly.

Credits

Thank you greatly to all the people from Stack Overflow Documentation who helped provide this content, more changes can be sent to web@petercv.com for new content to be published or updated

0m3r
Andy Terra
Benno Grimm
Blackhawk
Bookeater
Branislav Kollár
Comintern
dadde
Dave
Derpcode
FreeMan
Hosch250
Hubisan
hymced
IvenBach
Jeeped
Kaz
Kyle
LiamH

litelite
Logan Reed
Máté Juhász
Maarten van Stam
Macro Man
Mark.R
Martin
Mathieu Guindon
Miguel_Ryu
Neil Mussett
Nick Dewitt
pashute
PatricK
paul bica
R3uK
Roland
RubberDuck
SandPiper
Shawn V. Wilson
Sivaprasath Vadivel
Stefan Pinnow
Steve Rindsberg
SWa
Tazaf
Thierry Dalon
Thomas G
ThunderFrame
Tim

Chapters 1 and 44
Chapter 1
Chapters 1 and 23
Chapter 17
Chapter 1
Chapters 24, 40 and 43
Chapters 3, 5, 6, 14, 15, 18, 20, 21, 25, 26, 28, 36, 37 and 46
Chapter 5

Chapters 5, 18 and 25

Chapter 1

Chapters 14 and 15

Chapter 2

Chapter 18

Chapter 38

Chapter 31

Chapters 4, 5 and 36

Chapters 5 and 16

Chapter 36

Chapter 28

Chapters 1 and 23

Chapter 46

Chapter 1

Chapters 1, 4 and 18

Chapters 1, 4, 23, 29 and 30

Chapters 5 and 19

Chapter 23

Chapters 4, 5, 9, 16, 18, 23, 24, 28, 29, 31, 35, 38, 39, 45 and 46 Chapter 18

Chapters 5, 15, 22, 29, 32, 33 and 41

Chapter 1

Chapter 8

Chapter 27

Chapter 42

Chapter 24

Chapter 23

Chapters 4, 25, 30 and 38

Chapter 26

Chapters 2 and 5

Chapter 28

Chapters 1 and 4

Chapters 12, 25 and 30

Chapter 5

Chapter 18

Chapter 5

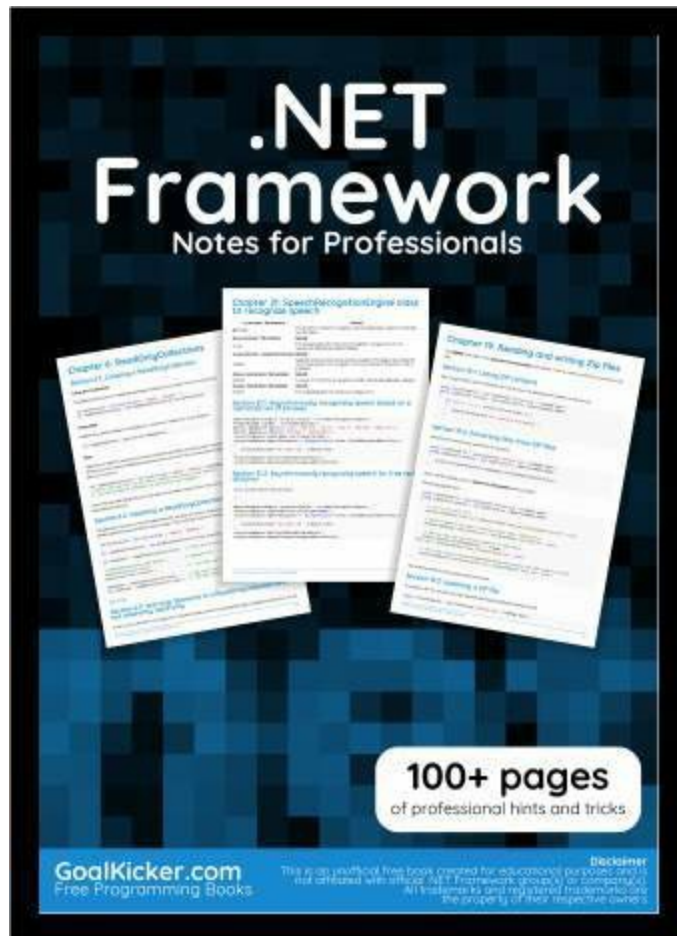
Chapters 4 and 14

Chapters 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 23, 25, 32 and 34

Chapter 40

Tom K. Chapter 5 Zev Spitz Chapter 36

You may also like



C++

Notes for Professionals



600+ pages
of professional hints and tricks.

GoalKicker.com
Free Programming Books

Disclaimer
This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes only. It is not affiliated with official C++ groups or companies.
All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Microsoft® SQL Server®

Notes for Professionals



200+ pages
of professional hints and tricks.

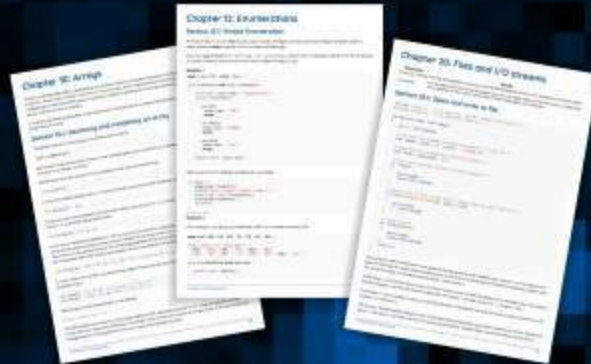
GoalKicker.com
Free Programming Books

This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes and is not affiliated with official Microsoft SQL Server® (products) or community. All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Disclaimer

C

Notes for Professionals



300+ pages
of professional hints and tricks.

GoalKicker.com
Free Programming Books

Disclaimer
This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes and is not affiliated with official C groups or companies.
All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Entity Framework

Notes for Professionals



80+ pages
of professional hints and tricks.

GoalKicker.com
Free Programming Books

Disclaimer
This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes and is not affiliated with or endorsed by Microsoft Corporation. All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

SQL

Notes for Professionals



100+ pages
of professional hints and tricks.

GoalKicker.com
Free Programming Books

This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes and is not affiliated with official SQL groups or companies. All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Disclaimer

C#

Notes for Professionals



700+ pages
of professional hints and tricks.

GoalKicker.com
Free Programming Books

This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes and is not affiliated with official C# (books) or (company).
All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Disclaimer

Excel VBA

Notes for Professionals



100+ pages
of professional hints and tricks.

GoalKicker.com
Free Programming Books

This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes only. It is not affiliated with official Excel VBA groups or companies. All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Disclaimer

Visual Basic[®] .NET

Notes for Professionals



100+ pages
of professional hints and tricks.

GoalKicker.com
Free Programming Books

DISCLAIMER
This is an unofficial free book created for educational purposes and is not affiliated with or endorsed by Microsoft Corporation (MS). All trademarks and registered trademarks are the property of their respective owners.